Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

Contents
A - Z

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

650i

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

CarManuals2.com

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.
We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

BMW recommends Castrol

CarManuals2.com

© 2008 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the
written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English VIII/08, 03 10 510
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

The fastest way to find specific topics is to use the index, refer to page 250.

Using this Owner's Manual
4 Notes
7 Reporting safety defects

At a glance
10 Cockpit
16 iDrive
24 Voice command system

Controls
30 Opening and closing
49 Adjusting
58 Transporting children safely
60 Driving
76 Everything under control
87 Technology for comfort, convenience and safety
104 Lamps
110 Climate
117 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips
126 Things to remember when driving

Navigation
134 Starting navigation system
136 Destination entry
148 Destination guidance
157 What to do if ...

Entertainment
160 On/off and tone
164 Radio
171 Satellite radio
174 CD player and CD changer
180 AUX-IN connection
181 USB-audio interface/mobile phone audio interface

Communications
186 Telephoning
201 BMW Assist

Mobility
212 Refueling
214 Wheels and tires
220 Under the hood
225 Maintenance
227 Care
231 Replacing components
235 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference
242 Technical data
246 Short commands of voice command system
250 Everything from A to Z

CarManuals2.com

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have made every effort to ensure that you are able to find what you need in this Owner's Manual as quickly as possible. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be happy to advise you.

You can find information on BMW, e.g. technology, on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.◀

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.◀

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.◀

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional accessories, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

These sections contain information on using the voice activation system.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

The individual vehicle

When purchasing your BMW, you have decided in favor of a model with individualized equipment and features. This Owner's Manual describes all models and equipment offered by BMW within the same line.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible that the features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. Therefore, have corresponding work on your BMW performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

California Proposition 65 Warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.
Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.
When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.
BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.
BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.
BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation or its occupants.
Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.
Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment such as CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or the like may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system, or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information.◀

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following applies only to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

CarManuals2.com

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone (800) 831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call 1-800-333-0510 toll-free from anywhere in Canada or 1-613-993-9851 from the Ottawa region and from other countries, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville, Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa, ON, K1A 0N5.
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

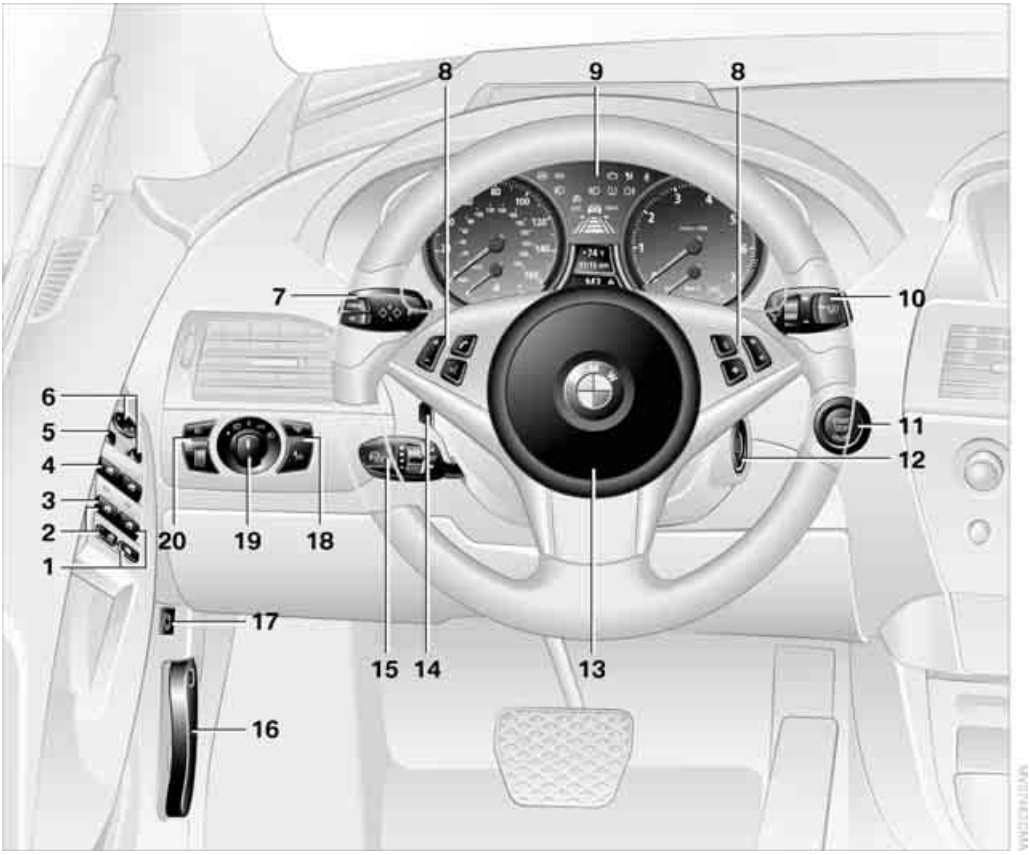
At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment.
The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating.

CarManuals2.com

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



1 Convertible: opening and closing rear window 41

2 Convertible: opening and closing windows together 41

3 Convertible: opening and closing rear windows 41

4 Opening and closing front windows 40

5 Exterior mirrors, folding in and out 55

6 Adjusting exterior mirrors 55
Automatic curb monitor 56

CarManuals2.com

7
- Turn signals 65
- High beams, headlamp flasher 106
- High-beam assistant* 106
- Roadside parking lamps 106
- CHECK Check Control 81
- BC Computer 77

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

8 Buttons on steering wheel

Mobile phone* 186:

- ▷ Press: accepting and ending call, starting dialing* for selected phone number and redialing if no phone number is selected
- ▷ Press and hold: redialing

Volume

Activating/deactivating voice command system* 24

Changing radio station 164
Selecting music track 175
Scrolling in phone book and in lists with stored phone numbers

Individually programmable* 57

Individually programmable 57

Leaving lane warning* 102

9 Instrument cluster 12

10 Windshield wipers 66

Rain sensor 66

11 START STOP ENGINE Starting/stopping engine and switching ignition on/off 60

12 Ignition lock 60

13 Horn, entire surface

14 Steering wheel heater* 56

Steering wheel adjustment 56

15 Cruise control* 67

Active cruise control 68

16 Releasing hood 220

17 Opening luggage compartment lid 35

18 Head-Up Display* 98

BMW Night Vision* 100

19 Parking lamps 104

Low beams 104
Welcome lamps 104
Automatic headlamp control 104
Daytime running lamps* 105
Welcome lamps 104
Adaptive Head Light* 106

20 Instrument lighting 108

Fog lamps 108

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Instrument cluster

1 Indicator lamps for turn signals
2 Speedometer
3 Indicator and warning lamps 13
4 Displays for
   ▷ Active cruise control* 72
   ▷ Leaving lane warning* 102
5 Tachometer 76
6 Engine oil temperature* 77
7 Display for
   ▷ Time/date 76
   ▷ Outside temperature 76
   ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 81
   ▷ Speed for cruise control 68
   ▷ Desired speed for active cruise control* 72
8 Display for
   ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 76
   ▷ Computer 77
   ▷ Date and remaining travel distance for service requirements 79
   ▷ Sport automatic transmission* 62
   ▷ Dynamic Driving Control* 64
   ▷ High-beam assistant* 106
   ▷ ⚠ Check Control message present 81
9 Fuel gauge 77
10 Resetting trip odometer 76

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Indicator and warning lamps

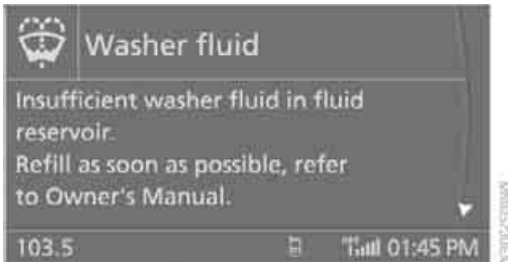
The concept

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

Some lamps are tested for proper function by briefly lighting up during starting of the engine or when the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.



Additional information, e.g. on the cause and elimination of a malfunction, can be opened via the Check Control system, refer to page 81.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps signal particular functions:

High beams/headlamp flasher 106

Fog lamps 108

Handbrake applied 62

Handbrake for Canadian models

Lamp flashes:
DSC or DTC controls the drive and braking forces for maintaining vehicle stability 89

DTC Dynamic Traction Control 90

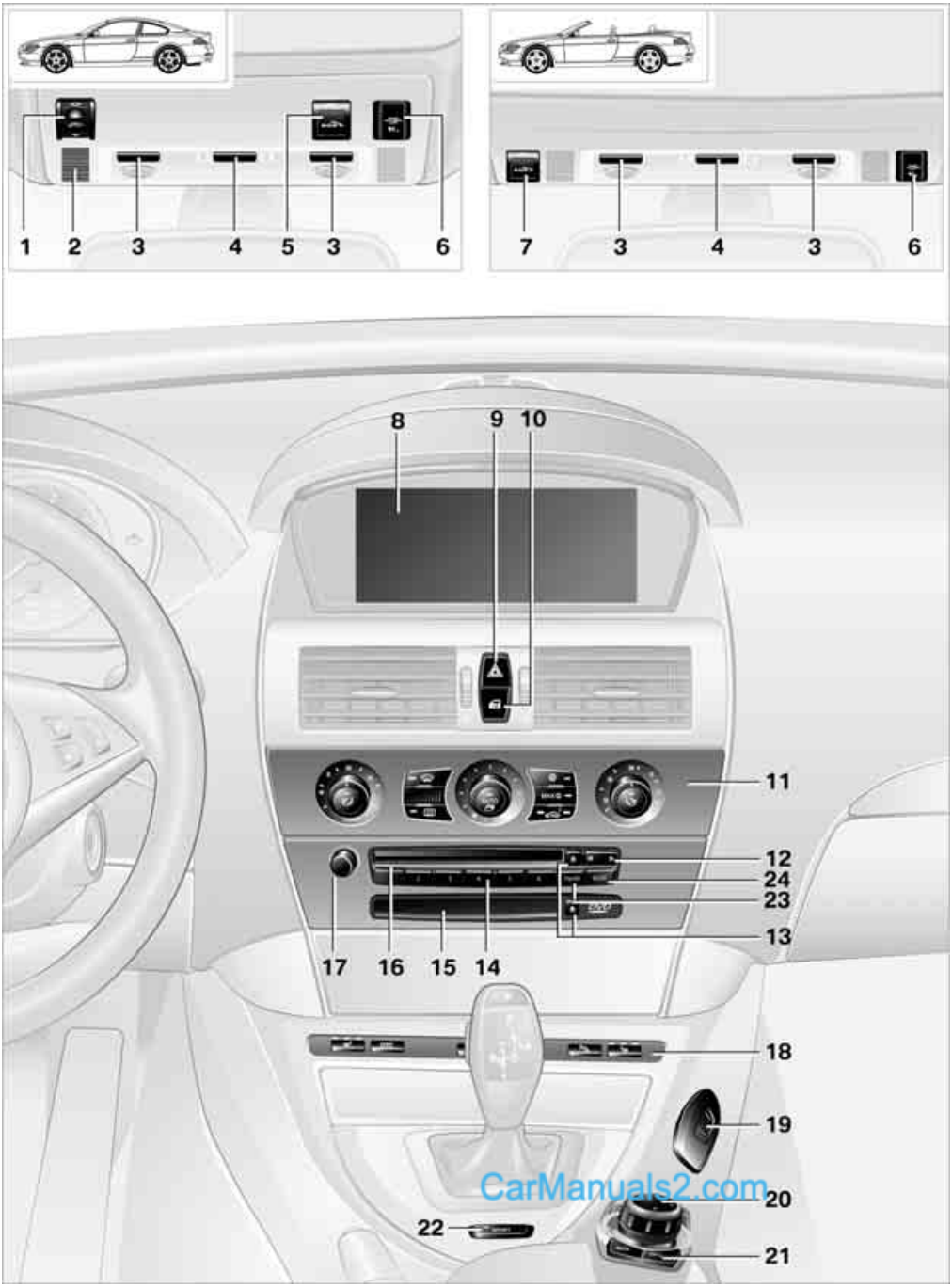
Exhaust-gas values 226

Exhaust-gas values for Canadian models 226

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Around the center console: controls and displays



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

1 Coupe: glass sunroof, electric with raise function* 42

2 Coupe: microphone for hands-free mode for telephone* and voice command system* 24
Convertible: microphone on steering column

CarManuals2.com

3 Reading lamps 109

4 Interior lamps 108

5 Coupe: initiating SOS emergency request 235

6 Indicator lamp for front passenger airbags 97

7 Convertible: initiating SOS emergency request* 235

8 Control Display 16

9 Hazard warning flashers

10 Central locking system 34

11 Automatic climate control 110

TEMP Temperature setting, left/right 111

AUTO Automatic air distribution and volume 111

Cooling function 113

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 113

Recirculated-air mode 113

MAX Maximum cooling 113

REST Residual heat mode 114

OFF Switching off automatic climate control 114

Air volume 112

Defrosting windows and removing condensation 112

Rear window defroster 112

12 Changing
- ▷ radio station 164
- ▷ track 175

13 Ejecting
- ▷ navigation DVD* 134
- ▷ audio CD 174

14 Programmable memory buttons 22

15 Drive for navigation system DVD with Professional* navigation system 134

16 Drive for audio CDs 174

17 Entertainment sound output on/off and adjusting volume 161

18 Heated seats* 55

PDC Park Distance Control* 87

DTC Dynamic Traction Control 89

Convertible: opening the convertible top 44

Convertible: closing the convertible top 44

19 Bracket for cup holder 120

20 Controller 16
Can be turned, pressed, or moved in four directions

21 Opening start menu on Control Display 18

22 Dynamic Driving Control 64

23 Selecting AM or FM waveband

24 Selecting radio, CD and CD changer

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

iDrive

iDrive combines the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

Controls

CarManuals2.com

1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons
You can use the buttons to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select the menu items and create settings.

- ▷ Call up a menu directly, arrow **3**
- ▷ Move in four directions, arrows **4**
- ▷ Turn, arrow **5**
- ▷ Press, arrow **6**

To avoid posing an unnecessary hazard due to inattention, both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users: never attempt to use the controls or make entries unless traffic and road conditions allow.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu
RADIO	Opens the Radio menu
CD	Opens the last Entertainment menu, e.g. CD or AUX
NAV	Opens the Navigation menu From the Navigation menu: opens the main menu
TEL	Opens the Telephone menu
BACK	Opens the previous menu Not available from the main menu
OPTION	Opens the Options menu

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Menu overview

Communication

- Telephone*
- BMW Assist* or BMW TeleServices*

CarManuals2.com

Navigation or onboard information

- Navigation system*
- Onboard information, e.g. for displaying the average fuel consumption

Entertainment

- Radio
- CD player and CD changer*
- USB-audio interface* for external audio device

Climate

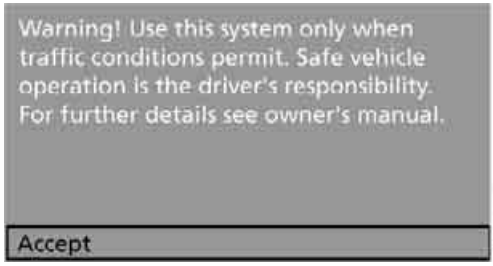
- Vent settings
- Automatic programs
- Parked car operation

i menu

- Switching off Control Display
- Tone and display settings
- Settings for your vehicle, e.g. for the central locking system
- Display of maintenance intervals and deadlines for legally mandated inspections
- Settings for telephone

Basic operation

From radio readiness, refer to page 60, the following message is shown on the Control Display:



To hide the message:
Press the controller.
This displays the start menu.

The message is hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Start menu

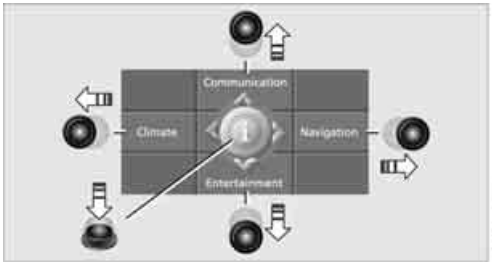
You can call up all the functions of iDrive using five menu items.

Opening start menu

Press the **MENU** button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Opening menu items of the start menu



In the start menu, you can open the Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate menu items by moving the controller to the left, right, front or rear.

You can open the i menu by pressing the controller.

Comfort opening of menu items

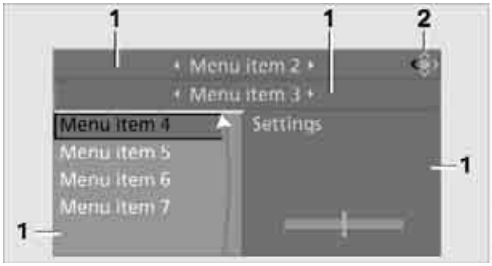
Comfort opening offers you:

- ▷ Opening of a menu item of the start menu in the last display shown
- ▷ Direct changing between Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate without pressing the **MENU** button

CarManuals2.com

To do so, move the controller in the corresponding direction and hold it there for longer than 2 seconds or use the buttons on the controller.

Displays in menu



1 Each menu is divided into fields.
The respective active field is highlighted.

2 A symbol indicates the last selected menu item of the start menu:

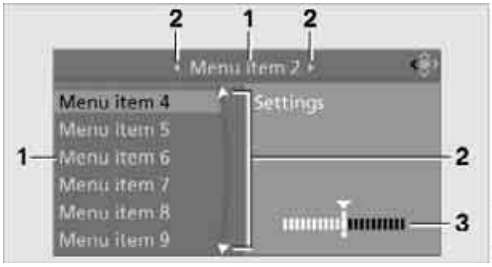
Communication

Navigation or onboard information

Entertainment

Climate

i menu



1 Menu items are usually grouped in horizontal or vertical lists.

2 In these lists, arrows indicate the possibility of accessing other menu items that are not currently visible.

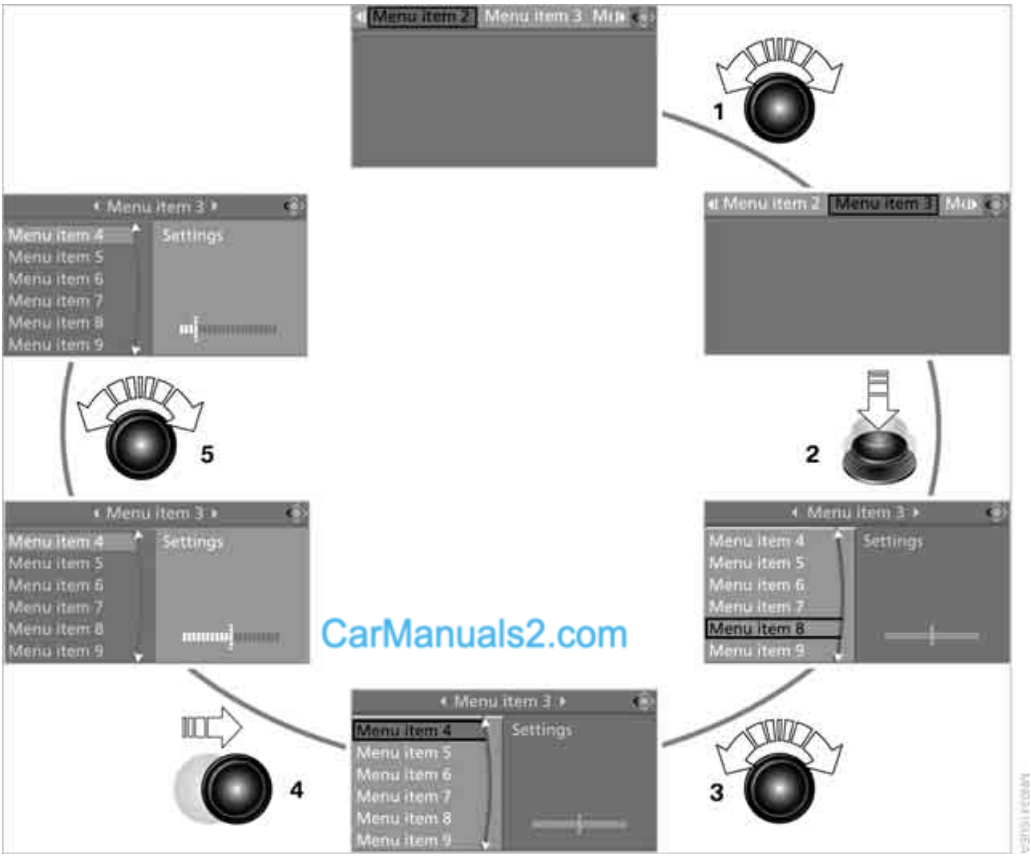
3 Settings are displayed graphically or numerically.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Operating principle at a glance

Basic operation via iDrive is described in this view.

You can view the individual steps under Settings on Control Display, Setting time, refer to page 84.



1 Selecting menu item:
- ▷ Turn the controller; the highlight moves
- ▷ Menu items shown in white can be selected by highlighting

2 Activating menu item:
- ▷ Press the controller
- ▷ New menu items are displayed or the function is carried out

3 Selecting menu item: refer to **1**

4 Changing between fields:
- ▷ Briefly move the controller to the left, right, front or back
- ▷ Release controller
- ▷ Active field appears lighter

5 Adjusting settings:
- ▷ Turn controller
- ▷ Graphic display, numerical value or text displays can be changed
- ▷ Confirmation by changing field

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Status information

1 Display for:
   - ▷ Entertainment:
     Radio, CD, AUX, USB-audio interface*
   - ▷ Telephone* in "Communication":
     Name of linked mobile phone, network search or no network
   - ▷ "BMW Assist"*:
     Active voice connection with a BMW Assist service
2 Entertainment sound output off
3 Station that transmits traffic information is received*:
   "TI":
   Traffic information for the navigation system can be received and transmission is switched on
4 Display for:
   - ▷ New entries present in "Missed calls"*
   - ▷ ▲ Roaming active
5 Telephoning* is possible if the mobile phone is paired in the vehicle
   Reception strength of mobile phone network, dependent on mobile phone
6 Time

Other displays:
The status information is temporarily hidden when there are Check Control instructions or inputs via the voice command system*.

Assistance window*

Additional information appears in the assistance window:

- ▷ the computer or the trip computer
- ▷ the arrow or map view with a navigation system*
- ▷ the current position

Selecting display

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Switching assistance window off/on

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.
2. Select "Assist. window off" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

To switch on, change to the assistance window and press the controller.

Switching Control Display off/on

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Display off" and press the controller.

To switch on, press the controller.

Programmable memory buttons

You can save and request certain functions of iDrive on the programmable memory buttons:

- Destinations of navigation
- Telephone, phone numbers
- Entertainment:
  - radio station
  - CD
  - CD compartment of CD changer*
  - AUX
  - USB-audio interface*

The assignment of the programmable buttons is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Saving function

Destinations of navigation

1. Select navigation destination, e.g. in the destination list or the address book.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

Special features:

- With the destination guidance system and the map view started, the current destination is stored.
- During destination entry via a map, the coordinates at the cursor are stored, not the current destination.

Telephone, phone numbers

1. Enter the phone number or select it in a list of the stored phone numbers, e.g. of the A-Z list.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

If a name is assigned to the phone number, the name will also be stored.

Entertainment

In the Entertainment menu, the sound source currently heard, e.g. a radio station, is stored, regardless of the selection on the Control Display.

1. Select the desired function, e.g. radio station or CD.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

If the vehicle is equipped with two drives, the current track is stored for CDs with compressed audio files.◀

Running function

Press the 1 ... 6 button.

When selecting a phone number, the connection is also established, or the destination guidance is started when a navigation destination is selected.

Displaying button assignment

You can display the assignment of the buttons by touching them with your finger. Please do not wear gloves when doing so. Touching with an object, e.g. a pen, does not function.

Displaying short info

Touch the 1 ... 6 button.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed.

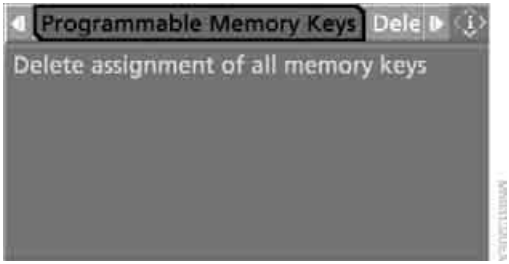
- Destination of navigation system
- Entertainment source
- Telephone, phone number
- Not assigned

Displaying detailed information

Touch the 1 ... 6 button longer.

Deleting button assignments

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Select "Programmable Memory Keys" and press the controller.



6. Select "Delete assignment of all memory keys" and press the controller.
7. Confirm with "Yes".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Voice command system*

The concept

The voice command system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. This frees you of having to use the controller.

The voice command system transforms your oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

The voice command system includes a special microphone.

The microphone is located:

▷ Near the interior rearview mirror in the Coupe, refer to page 14

▷ On the steering column in the Convertible

Precondition

Via iDrive, set the language that applies for the voice command system in order to enable identification of the spoken commands. To set the language of iDrive, refer to page 86.

Symbols in Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice command system.

Voice commands

CarManuals2.com

Activating voice command system

1. Press the button.

This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal tell you that the voice command system can respond to commands.

2. Say the command.
The command is displayed on the Control Display.

This symbol is shown on the Control Display when you can input additional commands.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

If no other commands are possible, then operate the equipment via iDrive.

Terminating or canceling voice command

Press the button on the steering wheel or

›Cancel‹

Commands

Having possible commands read aloud

You can have the system read aloud the possible commands related to the selected menu item on the Control Display.
To have the system list the possible commands:

›Options‹

For instance, if you have selected "CD", the commands available for operating the CD player and CD changer* are read out.

Opening help

›Help‹

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Radio on‹ or ›Turn radio on‹

Running functions directly with short commands

With short commands you can run certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected, refer to page 246.

Opening start menu

›Main menu‹

An example: selecting a track

1. Switch on Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Entertainment‹
   The system says:
   ››Entertainment‹‹

CarManuals2.com

4. ›CD‹
   The system says:
   ››CD on‹‹

5. Press the button on the steering wheel.
6. Select a track, e.g.:
   ›Track 1‹
   The system says:
   ››Track 1‹‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Notes

▷ The mobile phone can also be operated with voice commands, refer to page 197.◀

For voice commands, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Say the commands and numbers smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses. This also applies to spelling when entering the destination.
- ▷ Always issue commands in the language of the voice command system.
- ▷ When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name.
- ▷ For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice command system and do not use abbreviations.
- ▷ Keep the doors, windows and glass sun-roof* or convertible top closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- ▷ Avoid background noises in the vehicle while speaking.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. Its extensive array of features and accessories, both for driving and for your own safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

CarManuals2.com

Opening and closing

Keys/remote control

1 Remote control with integrated key

2 Spare key

3 Adapter for spare key, in glove compartment

Remote control with integrated key

Each remote control contains a battery which is charged in the ignition lock while driving. Drive a longer distance with each remote control at least twice a year to keep the battery charged. For comfort access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 40.

Depending on which remote control is detected by the vehicle during unlocking, different settings are activated and executed in the vehicle, refer to Personal Profile, page 30.

Information on the required for maintenance is also stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in remote control, page 225.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to unlock the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Hotel function, refer to page 35
- ▷ Driver's door, refer to page 34
- ▷ Luggage compartment lid, refer to page 35

CarManuals2.com

New remote controls

To obtain additional or replace lost keys, new remote controls with an integrated key are available at your BMW center.

Spare key

Store the spare key in a safe place such as your wallet. This key is not intended for regular use.

The spare key and integrated key of the remote control fit the same locks.

Adapter for spare key

The adapter is required so that the vehicle can be started with the spare key or radio readiness can be switched on.

Remove the adapter from the holder in the glove compartment and slide the spare key into the adapter before use.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set a number of functions of your BMW individually according to your preferences. Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use without you having to do anything. When

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

the vehicle is unlocked, the corresponding remote control is detected and the settings stored for it are called up and carried out.

This means that you will always find your BMW set to your own personal settings even if another person with his/her own remote control and settings has used the vehicle since the last time you drove it. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls, for two with comfort access*.

Personal Profile settings

Details on the settings are provided on the specified pages.

- Behavior of the central locking system when unlocking vehicle, refer to page 32
- Automatic locking of the vehicle, refer to page 34
- Programming buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 57
- Displays on Control Display:
  - 12h/24h clock mode, refer to page 85
  - Date format, refer to page 85
  - Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 85
  - Units of measure for consumption, route/distances, temperature and pressure, refer to page 86
  - Language on the Control Display, refer to page 86
- Lighting settings:
  - Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 66
  - Welcome lamps, refer to page 104
  - Pathway lighting, refer to page 105
  - Daytime running lamps*, refer to page 105
  - High-beam assistant*, refer to page 106
- PDC Park Distance Control*: optical warning, refer to page 87
- Head-Up Display*: selection and brightness of display, refer to page 98
- BMW Night Vision*: display settings, refer to page 102
- Automatic climate control: for AUTO program and intensity, cooling function, and automatic recirculated air control/recirculated air mode, temperature, air distribution, temperature in the upper body region, refer to page 111
- Navigation system*: voice instructions for destination guidance, refer to page 151

In addition, the following, most recently selected settings are recalled during unlocking:

- Programmable memory buttons: selecting stored functions, refer to page 22
- Driver's seat, exterior-mirror and steering-wheel position, refer to page 51
- Audio sources: volume and tone settings, refer to page 161
- Radio: display of stored stations, refer to page 164
- Phone: adjusting volume, refer to page 192

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system functions when the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors
- Compartment in the front center console
- Luggage compartment lid
- Fuel filler door

Operating from outside

- Via the remote control
- Using door lock
- With comfort access* via the door handles

These actions operate the anti-theft system* at the same time. It prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or door handles. The interior lamps and the courtesy lamps* are also switched on and off with the

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

remote control. The alarm system is armed/disarmed at the same time.
You can find more detailed information on the alarm system on page 37.

Operating from inside

Via the central locking button, refer to page 34.
The fuel filler door and the compartment in the front center console are not locked, refer to page 34.

In the event of a serious accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: Using remote control

Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Unlocking

Press the button.
The interior lamps, the courtesy lamps*, and the welcome lamps are switched on.

Setting unlocking behavior

You can set whether the first press of the button unlocks only the driver's door or the entire vehicle.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Unlock button" and press the controller.
8. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "All doors"
     Pressing the button once unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"*
     Press the button once to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler door. Pressing the button twice unlocks the entire vehicle.

9. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Comfort opening mode

Press and hold the button:

- ▷ Coupe: the windows are opened, the glass sunroof* is raised and the sliding visor slides back.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

▷ Convertible: the windows and the convertible top are opened.

⚠ Watch the convertible top during the opening process to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the button stops the operation.◀

Locking

Press the LOCK button.

⚠ Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if persons are inside, as unlocking from the inside is not possible without special knowledge.◀

Switching on interior lamps

With vehicle locked:
Press the LOCK button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.

Panic mode*

You can trigger the alarm system in case of danger:

Press the button for at least 3 seconds.

Switching off alarm: press any button.

Opening luggage compartment lid

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The luggage compartment lid opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

▷ A previously locked luggage compartment lid is also locked again after closing. Coupe: during opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.◀

Confirmation signals

You can activate or deactivate the confirmation signals.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Confirmation" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

7. Select the desired signal.
8. Press the controller.
   The signal is activated.

Malfunction

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. Should the remote control fail to operate due to interference of this kind, unlock and lock the vehicle via the door lock using a key.

If it is no longer possible to lock the vehicle using the remote control, then the battery is discharged. Use this remote control during an extended drive; this will recharge the battery, refer to page 30.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS
LX8CAS2

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

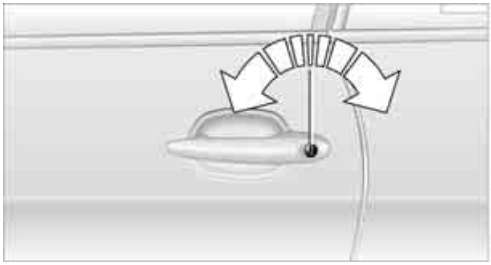
- This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CarManuals2.com

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

Opening and closing: Using door lock

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if persons are inside, as unlocking from the inside is not possible without special knowledge.◀



When unlocking

1. Turning the key once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler door.
2. A second turn of the key unlocks the passenger door and luggage compartment lid.

Convenient operation

You can use the door lock to operate the windows and the glass sunroof* in the Coupe or to operate the windows and the top in the Convertible.

Turn and hold the key in the positions for unlocking or locking.

Keep a close eye on the closing process and also on the opening process of the convertible top to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the key stops the operation.◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can turn a key all the way to the right or left in the door lock to lock or unlock the driver's door.

Opening and closing: from inside

This button serves to unlock or lock doors and the luggage compartment lid, but does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler door remains unlocked.

Automatic locking

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

7. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Relock door if not opened"
     The central locking system locks again after a short time if no door has been opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after driving"
     The central locking system locks the vehicle as soon as you start to drive.
8. Press the controller.
   The setting is selected.

CarManuals2.com

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening

- ▷ Either unlock both doors at the same time with the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- ▷ pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

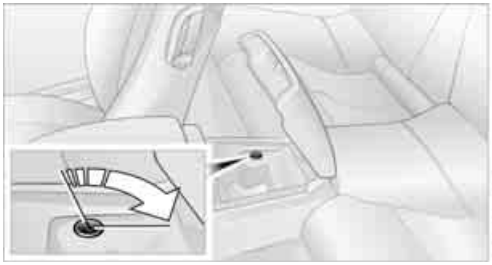
Locking

- ▷ Use the central locking button to lock both of the doors simultaneously, or
- ▷ press down the lock button of a door.
  To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Hotel function

The hotel function locks the compartment in the front center console and the luggage compartment lid separately and disconnects them from the central locking system. If you hand over the remote control without the integrated key, refer to page 30, e.g. at a hotel, then this prevents access to the luggage compartment and to the compartment in the front center console.



Turn the key to the right, refer to illustration, until the key slot points in the direction of travel and then remove:
The hotel function is activated after subsequent locking or unlocking of the vehicle. The system locks the luggage compartment lid and the compartment in the front center console and disconnects them from the central locking system.

Unlocking manually

In order to manually unlock the compartment in the front center console in the event of an electrical malfunction, turn the key all the way to the right until it reaches the stop.

If unlocking was manual, return the lock to the home position, i.e. all the way back to the left, before reactivating the hotel function.◀

Doors

Automatic soft closing*

To close the doors, merely push them gently. The closing process will then be carried out automatically.

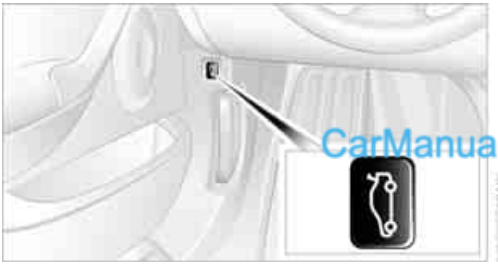
Make sure that the closing path of the doors is clear; otherwise injuries may result.◀

Luggage compartment lid

During opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.◀

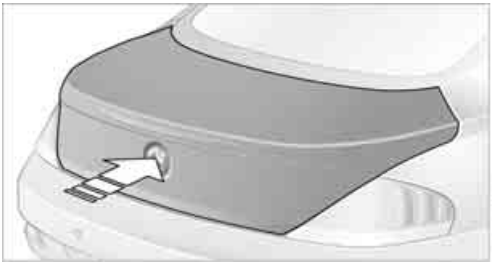
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Opening from inside



Press the button:
The luggage compartment lid opens, provided that it is not locked or the hotel function is not activated, refer to the above section.

Opening from outside



Press the upper half of the BMW emblem or press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: the luggage compartment lid opens.

Convertible: if the convertible top is not completely open or closed, then the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened, refer to page 44.◀

Unlocking manually

The luggage compartment lid lock is located under the BMW emblem. All keys, refer to page 30, fit the luggage-compartment lid lock.

Turn the key toward the right up to the stop: the luggage compartment lid opens.

If you use the lock to open the luggage compartment lid while the alarm system is armed, the alarm will be triggered. To prevent this, you should deactivate the alarm beforehand.
If the alarm is inadvertently triggered: switch off the alarm, refer to page 37.◀

Closing

Make sure that the closing path of the luggage compartment lid is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the luggage compartment lid make it easier to pull down.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

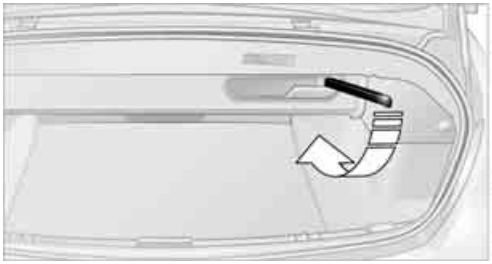
Emergency release

Pull the lever in the cargo bay. The luggage compartment lid is unlocked.

Luggage compartment

There are four lashing eyes on the inner corners of the luggage compartment for securing luggage nets* or securing straps to fix luggage in position.
Also refer to Securing cargo, page 130.

Convertible: increasing luggage compartment capacity



With the convertible top closed, you can increase the luggage compartment capacity: To do so, unfold the handle and press it downward in the direction of travel, refer to arrow. This moves the convertible top compartment floor into the raised position.

Before opening the convertible top, carry out this procedure in reverse order.

▷ The convertible top cannot be opened if the convertible top compartment floor is in the raised position.◀

CarManuals2.com

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

- ▷ To the opening of a door, the hood, or the luggage compartment lid
- ▷ To movements in the vehicle interior: interior motion sensor, refer to page 38
- ▷ To changes in the vehicle's tilt if someone attempts to steal the wheels or tow the vehicle
- ▷ To interruptions in battery voltage

Unauthorized operations are briefly signaled by the alarm system:

- ▷ with an acoustic alarm
- ▷ by switching on the hazard warning flashers
- ▷ by flashing the high beams

Arming and disarming alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

You can open the luggage compartment lid, even with the system armed, by using the button of the remote control, refer to page 33. When the luggage compartment lid is closed, it is once again locked and monitored.

Switching off alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, refer to page 32, or
- ▷ insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Indicator lamp displays

- The indicator lamp below the interior rear-view mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking: the doors, hood or luggage compartment lid are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. However, the interior motion sensor is not activated.
- The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: your vehicle has not been disturbed while you were away.
- The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted into the ignition lock, however for a maximum of approx. 5 minutes: your vehicle has been disturbed while you were away.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, e.g. in case of an attempted wheel theft or towing.

Interior motion sensor

Coupe:
In order for the interior motion sensor to function properly, the windows and glass sunroof* must be completely closed.

Convertible:
Monitors the interior up to the height of the seat cushions. This means that the alarm system, including the interior motion sensor, is armed even if the convertible top is open. Falling objects, e.g. leaves, can trigger false alarms, refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time. This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- In two-level garages
- When transporting on car-carrying trains, by sea or on a trailer
- When animals are to remain in the vehicle

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

Comfort access*

Comfort access allows you to access your vehicle without having to hold the remote control in your hand. It is sufficient to carry the remote control with you, e.g. in your jacket pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the associated remote control in the immediate vicinity or in the interior.

Comfort access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking/locking vehicle
- Comfort closing with Coupe
- Opening luggage compartment lid separately
- Starting engine

Functional requirement

- The vehicle or the luggage compartment lid can only be locked if the vehicle detects that the remote control you are carrying is outside the vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- The engine can only be started if the vehicle detects that the remote control is located in the vehicle.

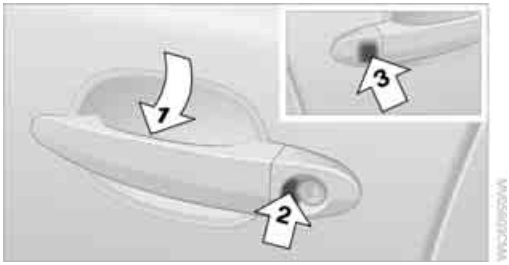
Comparison with ordinary remote control

You can control the functions mentioned previously with the comfort access or by pressing the buttons on the remote control. Therefore, please familiarize yourself with the information on opening and closing beginning on page 30 beforehand.

The special features when using comfort access are described in the following.

Should a short delay occur when opening or closing the windows, the glass sunroof or the convertible top, the system is checking whether a remote control is located in the vehicle. Please repeat opening or closing if necessary.◀

Unlocking



Grasp a door handle fully, refer to arrow **1**, but do not touch the surfaces, arrow **2** or **3** when doing so. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Locking

- On the driver's door, touch the highlighted surface, arrow **2**, with a finger for approx. 1 second, but do not grasp the door handle.
- On the front passenger door, touch the highlighted surface, arrow **3**, with the back of your hand for approx. 1 second, but do not grasp the door handle.

This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

Please make sure that the ignition and all electronic systems/consumers are switched off before locking to save the battery.◀

Coupe: Comfort closing

Hold a finger or the back of your hand against the surface, arrow **2** or **3**, but do not grasp the door handle while doing so.

The windows, the glass sunroof* and the sliding visor are closed.

Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Removing the hand from the door handle stops the closing process immediately.◀

Opening luggage compartment lid separately

Press the upper half of the BMW emblem. This corresponds to pressing the button.

If a remote control accidentally left in the luggage compartment is detected inside the locked vehicle after the luggage compartment lid has been closed, then the luggage compartment lid opens again. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal* sounds.◀

Switching on radio readiness

By pressing the Start/Stop button, you switch on the radio readiness, refer to page 60.

When doing so, do not depress the brake or clutch pedal, otherwise the engine will start immediately.◀

Starting engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition if a remote control is located in the interior of the vehicle. It need not be inserted in the ignition lock, refer to page 60.

If you take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle with the engine running, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. As long as no remote control is detected, it is only possible to

CarManuals2.com

restart the engine within approx. 10 seconds after it is switched off.

Switching off engine when equipped with sport automatic transmission

The engine can only be switched off in transmission position P, refer to page 61.
To switch off the engine in transmission position N, the remote control must be inserted in the ignition lock.

Before driving into a car wash in vehicles equipped with automatic transmission

1. Insert remote control into ignition lock.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Engage transmission position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

The vehicle can roll.

Malfunction

The comfort access function may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this occurs, then open or close the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with a key. To start the engine following this, insert the remote control in the ignition lock.

When unlocking or locking/comfort closing do not simultaneously grasp the door handle and touch the surfaces, arrow **2** or **3**. Otherwise, you may limit the function.

Replacing battery

If the battery of the remote control is dead, a message will appear in the Control Display.

1. Remove integrated key from remote control, refer to page 30.

2. Remove cover.
3. Lay in new battery with positive side facing upward.
4. Press cover closed.

Return used battery to a recycling collection point or to your BMW center.◀

Windows

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the windows and keep them in your field of vision until they are shut.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the windows and injure themselves.◀

Coupe: Opening, closing

▷ Press switch to resistance point:
The window continues to open as long as you keep the switch pressed.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Pressing

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Convertible: Opening, closing

To close the side windows while the vehicle is being driven, always close the rear windows first or all four windows simultaneously; otherwise, the windows cannot close tightly at higher speeds.◀

Individually

▷ Press switch to resistance point:
The window continues to open as long as you keep the switch pressed.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch. The rear windows cannot be closed automatically.

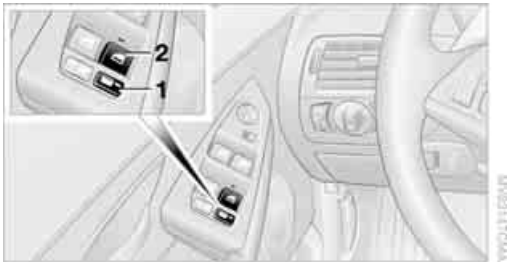
CarManuals2.com

Together

1. Briefly press button **1**:
The LEDs in button **1** and switch **2** light up for approx. 10 seconds.
2. Press switch **2**:
   ▷ Down to the resistance point:
   All windows, including the rear window, continue to open as long as you press the switch.
   You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.
   ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
   All windows open automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

Briefly press button **1** again to deactivate the function. The LEDs go out.

Rear window



1. Briefly press button **1**:
The LEDs in button **1** and switch **2** light up for approx. 10 seconds.
2. Press switch **2**:
   ▷ Down to the resistance point:
   The rear window continues to open for as long as you hold down the switch.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

You can close the rear window in the same manner by pulling the switch.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
The rear window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

Briefly press button **1** again to deactivate the function. The LEDs go out.

▷ The rear window opens and closes automatically when you open or close the convertible top.◀

For information on using the convenient operation mode at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 32 or 34.

Coupe: For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 39.

After switching off ignition

You can still operate the windows with the remote control removed or the ignition switched off for approx. 1 minute, as long as neither of the doors has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

⚠ Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the window's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.
Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows, otherwise the pinch protection system will be impaired.
Convertible: the rear side windows and rear window are not equipped with a pinch protection system. Therefore, watch the rear side windows and the rear window during closing, otherwise injuries can occur.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside or if, for example, ice on the window prevents normal closing, proceed as follows:

CarManuals2.com

1. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold. The pinch protection system is limited and the window opens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold again within approx. 4 seconds. The window closes without the pinch protection system.

Coupe: Glass sunroof, electric with raise function*

The glass sunroof and sliding visor are operational whenever the ignition is switched on.

⚠ To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the glass sunroof and keep it in your field of vision until it is shut.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the roof and injure themselves.◀

Raising and closing glass sunroof

▷ Briefly press the switch:
The sunroof opens and the sliding visor moves back approx. 2 in/5 cm
or
press the switch twice beyond the resistance point toward the rear:
The sunroof opens and the sliding visor moves completely back.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

▷ To close, briefly press the switch or push it twice beyond the resistance point toward the front:
The sunroof and sliding visor close.

Opening and closing sliding visor

CarManuals2.com

▷ Push the switch up to the resistance point in the desired direction:
The sliding visor continues to move for as long as you hold the switch.

▷ Push the switch beyond the resistance point in the desired direction:
The sliding visor moves automatically. Briefly press the switch again in any direction to stop the movement.

For information on using the convenient operation mode at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 32 or 34.

For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 39.

Pinch protection system

If the glass sunroof encounters resistance when closing, the closing action is interrupted and the glass sunroof opens.
If the sliding visor encounters resistance when closing within the last approx. 8 in/20 cm, the closing action is interrupted and the sliding visor opens again slightly.

⚠ Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the sunroof's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the sunroof would continue closing.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside, slide the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold. The roof closes without the pinch protection system.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

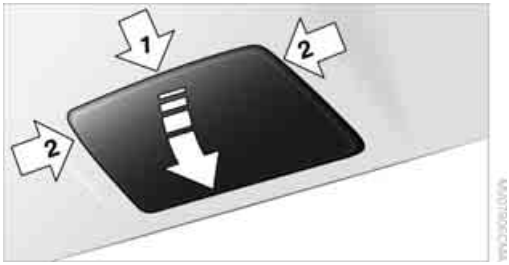
After an interruption in the power supply the glass sunroof may not move. Then have the system initialized. Should this occur, please have the sunroof initialized at your BMW center.

Moving manually*

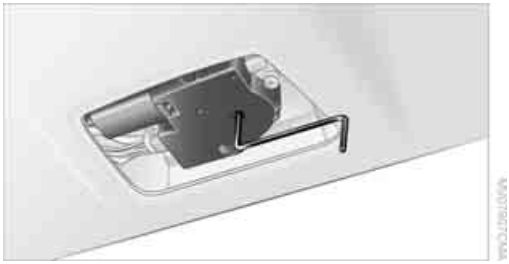
In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the glass sunroof and the sliding visor manually.

Glass sunroof

1. Remove cover on headliner in front of rear window. To do so, lift gently away from headliner at the front, arrow **1**, using the screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 231. Grasp behind the cover, arrows **2** and pull firmly downward.



2. Insert the Allen wrench* into the opening provided.



3. Use the Allen wrench * to move the glass sunroof in the desired direction.

Sliding visor

1. Fold the cover downward, if necessary using the screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 231.

2. Insert the Allen wrench* into the opening provided.

3. Use the Allen wrench * to move the sliding visor in the desired direction.

Convertible: Top

The fully automatic convertible top combines secure weather protection with simple and convenient operation.

Here are a few tips for getting the maximum pleasure from your Convertible:

▷ It is advisable to close the convertible top when the vehicle is parked. The closed convertible top not only protects the passenger compartment from unforeseen weather damage, it also provides a certain amount of protection from theft. Nonetheless, even if the convertible top is closed, only keep valuables in the locked luggage compartment.

▷ Do not attach luggage rack systems to the convertible top.

⚠ In order to avoid damage, do not move the convertible top at temperatures below +14 °F /–10 °C.
Do not leave the convertible top in its storage compartment for longer than one day when wet; otherwise, damage from moisture can occur.
Do not place any objects on the convertible top; otherwise, if the top were to be operated, these objects could fall off and lead to damage or injury.
Never move the convertible top when the roll-over protection system is raised.
Driving without having completed the opening or closing action can lead to damage or injury.
Do not place hands in the top mechanism during the opening and closing action. Keep children away from the travel path of the convertible top.
For safety reasons, do not move the convertible top unless the vehicle is stationary.◀

▷ If you have initiated top movement with the vehicle at a stop and then start to drive, e.g. at a traffic light, you can continue the initiated operation up to a speed of 20 mph/ 30 km/h:
To do so, press and hold the corresponding button.◀

▷ Partial vacuums that occur at higher speeds in the passenger compartment can make the convertible top flap. Use the automatic climate control to increase the air volume so that a partial vacuum in the vehicle does not occur.◀

Prior to opening and closing

▷ Observe the safety precautions above.

▷ Ensure that the convertible top compartment floor in the luggage compartment is folded down, refer to page 37, as otherwise the convertible top cannot be opened.

▷ Make sure that the luggage compartment lid is closed.

Opening and closing

From radio readiness, refer to page 60, with the vehicle stationary:

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

To avoid putting excessive strain on the battery, only move the convertible top when the engine is running if possible.
Before closing the convertible top, remove foreign objects from the windshield frame, as these might inhibit closing of the convertible top.◀

1 To close, press and hold the button until the process is complete
2 LED
3 To open, press and hold the button until the process is complete

When the button for operating the convertible top is pressed, the side windows move down all the way and the rear window is lowered completely.
If the convertible top is not completely open or closed, then the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened.◀

LED

In the following situations, in addition to the LED, a message appears in the Control Display and an acoustic signal may sound:

- During convertible top operation, the LED lights up green. It goes out as soon as the opening or closing action is finished.
- If the LED flashes red when you release the button, the opening or closing action has not yet finished.
- If the LED lights up red when the button is pressed, either the convertible top compartment floor in the luggage compartment is in the raised position or a malfunction has occurred. The convertible top cannot be moved.

Interruption

The automatic sequence of movements is interrupted if the button for top operation is released. The sequence can be continued in the desired direction by pressing the appropriate button.
If the opening or closing action is interrupted for a longer period, the convertible top remains in that position for approx. 15 minutes before it slowly moves to a stable position.

A convertible top which is not completely opened or closed presents a danger.
Do not interrupt and continue the closing action several times in succession; otherwise, the top mechanism can be damaged.◀

If the convertible top is not completely open or closed, then the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened.◀

Convenient operation with remote control and via door lock

Refer to pages 32 and 34.

Closing manually

Only close the convertible top manually if absolutely necessary; never open it manually. The convertible top compartment lid cannot be locked in the event of an electrical malfunction and would open while the vehicle is being driven.
Improper handling can lead to damage.◀

Before closing

1. Open luggage compartment lid.
2. Take the Allen wrench and the screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 231.
3. Pry out the two buttons in the luggage compartment with the screwdriver and then pull

CarManuals2.com

firmly. This unlocks the convertible top compartment lid.

4. Close luggage compartment lid.

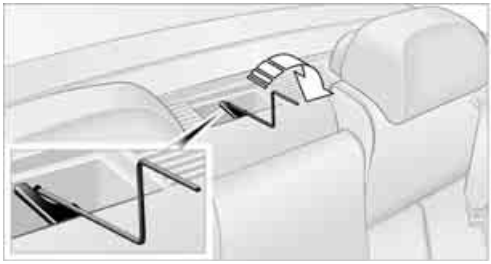
   During manual convertible top operation, the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened.◀

5. Completely open the side windows and the rear window.
   If the rear window cannot be opened using the switch, it must be lowered manually.

Opening rear window manually

1. Pry out the cover between the rear head restraints. To do so, place the screwdriver as close as possible to the locking elements, as shown in the illustration.

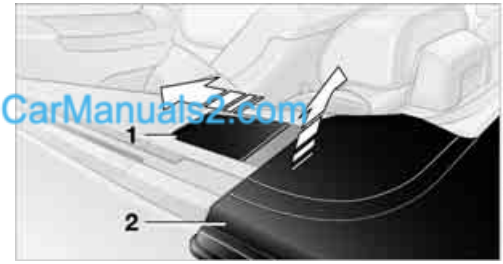
2. Insert the Allen wrench as far as possible into the opening and turn firmly in the direction indicated by the arrow until the rear window is completely open.



Closing

Perform the following work steps with the assistance of a second person and with the doors open, otherwise injury and damage to the convertible top can occur.◀

1. Push the cover **1** on the left and right of the side panel forward. Reach into the resulting openings and raise the convertible top compartment lid **2** as far as it will go.



CarManuals2.com

2. Grasp the top with both hands at the left and right side frame, arrow **3**.

   Only lift out the top by the side frame, otherwise the top may be damaged.◀

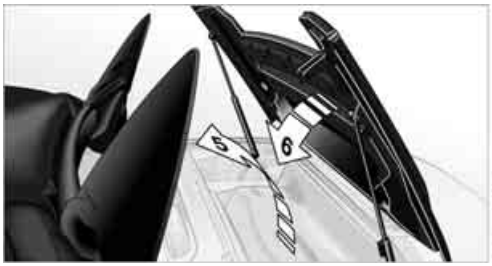
3. Together with the other person, pull the two sides of the convertible top out simulta-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

neously and pivot forward. When doing so, keep the convertible top compartment lid open, arrow **4**, e.g. with your shoulder.

Do not carry out the next operation, raising top ends, until the top has been swung forward, otherwise damage can occur.◀

4. Raise the two convertible top ends as far as possible, arrow **5**, and close the convertible top compartment lid, arrow **6**.



5. Fold the top ends down onto the convertible top compartment lid.
6. From the interior, take out the cover in the center of the front top frame; use a screwdriver if necessary.
7. Insert the Allen wrench into the opening provided.

8. From the outside, both persons pull the front frame of the convertible top downward, as simultaneously as possible on the two sides.
9. Turn the Allen wrench in the direction of the arrow until the front convertible top frame is locked to the windshield frame.
   The rear convertible top ends are automatically pressed onto the convertible top compartment lid and close tightly with tension.
10. If necessary, close the rear window again manually in the same way as above.

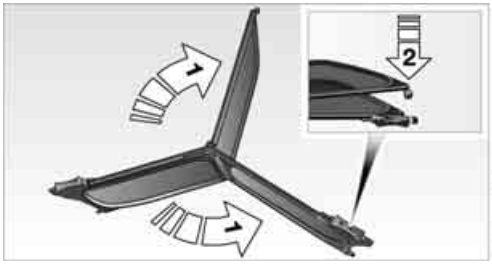
Wind deflector*

The wind deflector keeps the air movement in the passenger compartment to a minimum when the convertible top is open, thus enabling pleasant driving even at higher speeds.

The wind deflector is stowed in a protective sleeve in the luggage compartment. Short instructions for use are also provided on the protective sleeve.

Before installing

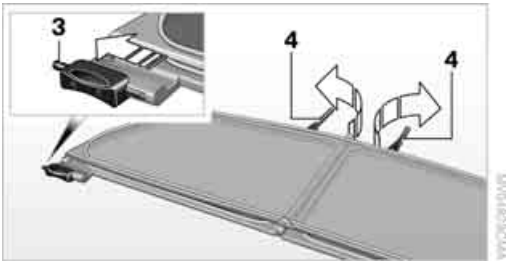
1. Remove the wind deflector from the protective sleeve and fold it open, refer to arrows **1**.



2. Press the upper and lower section together until the locking device engages, refer to arrow **2**.

CarManuals2.com

3. Push the securing pin **3** out until it engages.

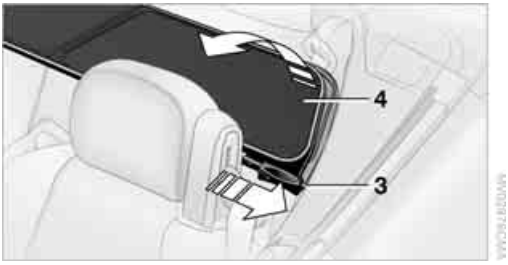


4. Unfold the rear mounts **4**.

Installing

1. Insert the securing pin **1** of the wind deflector into the appropriate opening on the right side of the vehicle.

2. Guide the rear mounts **2** into the receptacles provided.
3. Push the securing pin **3** on the left side into the appropriate opening until it snaps into place.



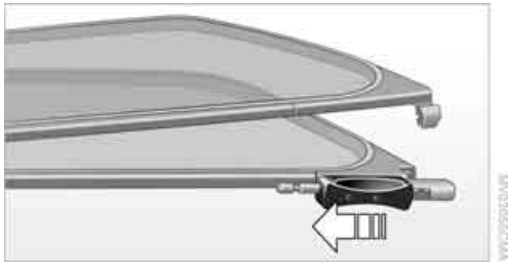
4. Fold up the upper half **4** of the wind deflector.

⚠ With wind deflector fitted: do not incline the front seat backrests too far backward if the seat is to be moved back to the end position. Otherwise, the wind deflector will be damaged.◀

Removing

The same as installing, but in reverse order.

Folding up



1. Push the handle of the securing pin on the wind deflector on the left side of the vehicle all the way back and release the locking mechanism.
2. Fold in the upper and lower section.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Adjusting

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In the interaction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the sitting position plays an important role in an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

CarManuals2.com

For additional information on Transporting children safely, refer to page 58.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always hold the steering wheel by its rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms in the event of airbag deployment.
No one and nothing is to come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly and does not rest feet or legs on the instrument panel, otherwise leg injuries can occur if the knee and front airbags are triggered.
Make sure that occupants do not rest their head on the side or head airbags, otherwise injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.◀

Even if you adhere to all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 95.

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Head restraints, refer to page 52.

Safety belt

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle has four seats that are each equipped with a safety belt.

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub against sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be pinched. Wear the safety belt without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Otherwise the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen. Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly and pull the belt in the upper body area periodically to readjust the tension, in order to avoid a reduction in the restraint of the safety belt.◀

Safety belts refer to page 54.

Seats

Note before adjusting

Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.
Also on the passenger side, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven, otherwise there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

Please follow the instructions on damage to safety belts provided on page 55 and the information on the active front head restraints on page 52.

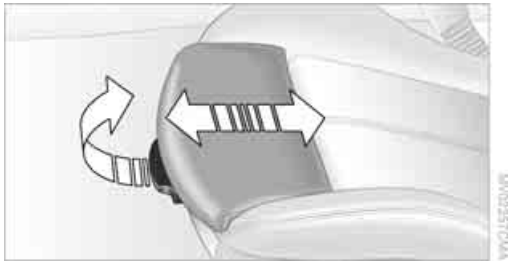
⚠ Convertible: with the wind deflector fitted, do not incline the front seat backrests too far backward if the seat is to be moved back to the end position. Otherwise, the wind deflector will be damaged.◀

Adjusting seat

⚠ To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 49.◀

1 Angle
2 Longitudinal direction
3 Height
4 Backrest
5 Convertible: head restraints, refer to page 53

With the sports seat*, you can also adjust the thigh support manually:



Pull the lever and adjust the thigh support in the longitudinal direction.

Lumbar support*

CarManuals2.com

You can also adjust the contours of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

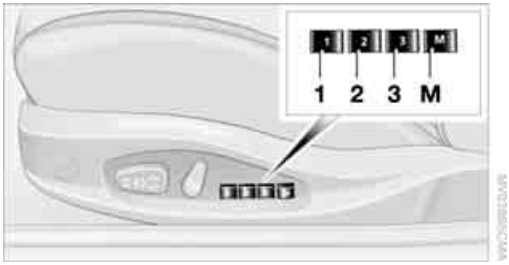
The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

▷ Increase or decrease curvature:
press front or rear section of switch.

▷ Move curvature up or down:
press upper or lowers section of switch.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory



You can store and select three different adjustment settings for the driver's seat, exterior mirrors and steering wheel.

The adjustment of the lumbar support is not stored in the memory.

Storing

1. Switch on radio readiness or ignition, refer to page 60.
2. Set the desired seat, exterior mirror and steering wheel positions.
3. Press the M button:
   The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3**:
   The LED goes out.

Requesting

Do not request a position from the memory while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident from unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel.◀

Comfort mode

1. Open the driver's door after unlocking or switch on radio readiness, refer to page 60.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3**.

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

The adjusting procedure for the steering wheel is interrupted if you briefly press the switch for the steering wheel adjustment in any direction, refer to page 56.

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch ignition on or off, refer to page 60.
2. Press the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3** and maintain pressure until the adjustment process has been completed.

If the M button was pressed inadvertently: press the button again; the LED goes out.

Requesting with remote control

The last positions of the driver's seat, external rearview mirrors, and steering wheel are stored for the remote key currently in use.

You can select* when the position is requested.

▷ Request when unlocking vehicle

▷ Request when opening driver's door. In the Convertible, only this function is used.

When using this feature, always make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty and unobstructed. Failure to do so could cause injury to persons or damage to objects behind the seat as a result of a rearward movement of the seat.◀

CarManuals2.com

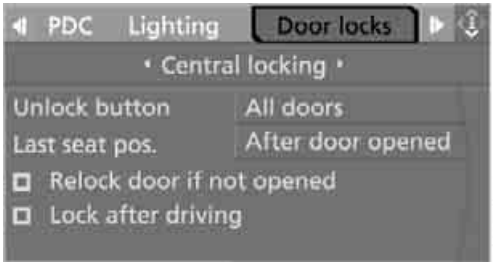
The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Last seat pos." and press the controller.
8. Select "After unlocking"* or "After door opened".

9. Press the controller.

To cancel the request:
Select "Deactivated" and press the controller.

Front head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident.Only remove the head restraints if no one will be sitting on the seat in question. Reinstall the head restraints before transporting passengers, as otherwise the head restraint cannot provide its protective function.◀

Active front head restraints

In the event of a rear-end collision of sufficient severity, the active head restraint reduces the distance to the head.

Do not use seat covers or head restraint covers that could impede the proper functioning of the active head restraint. Otherwise, there is no assurance that the active head restraint will perform its protective function and it is not possible to take advantage of its injury-reducing potential in the event of a rear-end collision.
Have the active head restraints reset after they are triggered in a rear-end collision. Only have this work carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, this safety equipment will not function properly.◀

CarManuals2.com

Please contact a BMW center if you wish to have the front head restraints removed and installed.◀

Coupe

Height adjustment

▷ To raise: pull the head restraint upward.
▷ To lower: slide the head restraint downward.

To reach the lowest position, press the button, refer to arrow **1**.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Front seats: adjusting distance to the back of the head

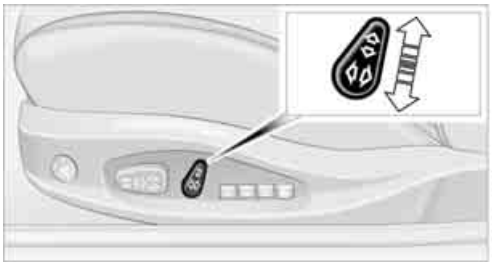
▷ Forward: pull up.

▷ Back: push the button and slide the head-rest cushion toward the rear.

⚠ Do not place any objects behind the headrest cushion. Otherwise, you can impair the proper function of the head restraint.◀

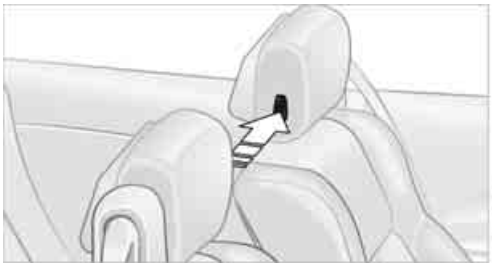
Convertible

Adjusting height



Move the switch up or down.

Front seats: adjusting distance to the back of the head



▷ Forward: pull up.

▷ Back: push the button and slide the head-rest cushion toward the rear.

⚠ Do not place any objects behind the headrest cushion. Otherwise, you can impair the proper function of the head restraint.◀

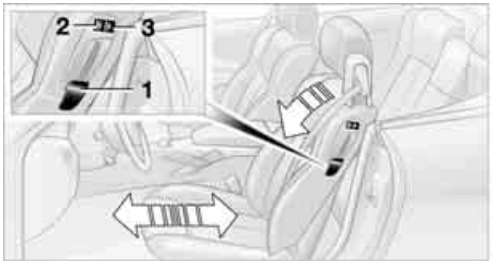
Entering rear

⚠ Before starting to drive, fold backrests back, otherwise there is the danger of accident due to an unexpected movement of the seat.◀

Coupe: releasing backrest

Pull the lever upward and fold the backrest forward.
The lever is designed so that the safety belt can be hooked onto it. This enables you to fasten the safety belt more conveniently.

Convertible: releasing backrest



The belt system integrated in the seat makes it easier to get in back.

CarManuals2.com

1. Pull lever **1** up and fold the backrest forward.
2. Press and hold button **2** until the seat has moved into the desired position.
3. After passengers have entered the rear, fold the backrest back and lock it in place.
4. Press and hold button **3** until the seat has moved back into its previous position. If you release button **3** before this, the seat stops in its current position.

CarManuals2.com

You can lock the backrest in place when it is folded forward. This is useful, for example, when you get into the vehicle while it is parked on a hill. Press the backrest until it audibly locks into place. To fold it back, you do not need to use lever **1** to release it.◀

Lock backrest warning lamp:
Lights up when the backrest is not locked. At the same time, a message is shown on the Control Display.

Safety belts

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 49.◀

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Fastening

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Releasing

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be in the correct position for adults of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted, refer to page 49.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and passenger seat*

The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. A message also appears on the Control Display. Please check whether safety belts are being worn correctly.

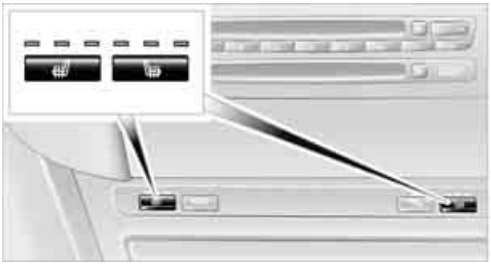
The safety belt reminder is operative at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the passenger seat.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Damage to safety belts

When subjected to strain due to an accident or in the event of damage, replace the safety belts, the belt tensioners, and any child restraint systems and have the belt anchor points checked. Only have this work carried out at a BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise correct operation of this safety equipment is not guaranteed.◀

Heated seats*



Press once for each temperature level. The maximum temperature is supplied when three LEDs are lit.

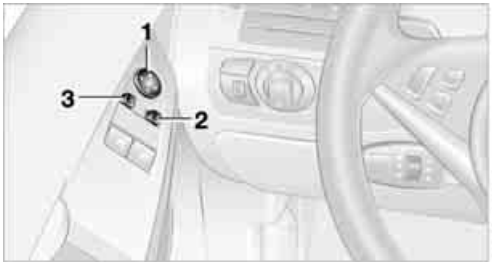
The temperature is reduced and if need be, the heating is switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The LEDs remain lit.

To switch off:
Press the button longer.

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

The mirror on the passenger's side is more curved than the driver's mirror. Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance of following traffic based on what you see in the mirrors, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀



1 Adjusting

2 Switching to the other mirror or to the automatic curb monitor

3 Folding mirrors in and out*

Storing the mirror positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 51.

Adjusting manually

You can also adjust the mirrors manually by pressing against the outer edges of their mirror glass.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out

Pressing button **3** allows you to fold mirrors in and out up to a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. This is advantageous, for example, in car washes, narrow streets or for bringing mirrors that have been manually folded in back into the correct position. Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Before going through a car wash, fold the mirrors in manually, or with button **3**, otherwise they could be damaged, depending on the width of the car wash system.◀

Automatic heating

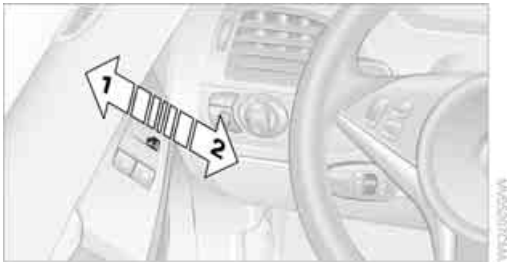
Below a certain outdoor temperature, both exterior mirrors are heated whenever the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

CarManuals2.com

Tilting down passenger-side mirror – automatic curb monitor

Activating

1. Slide switch into the driver's side mirror position, arrow **1**.



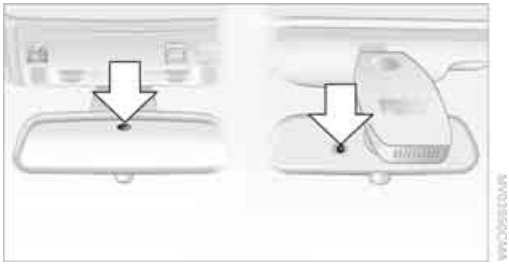
2. Shift into reverse or move selector lever into position R.
   The mirror glass tilts downward somewhat on the passenger's side. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle – such as a curb – when parking, etc.

Deactivating

Slide switch into the passenger side mirror position, arrow **2**.

CarManuals2.com

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature



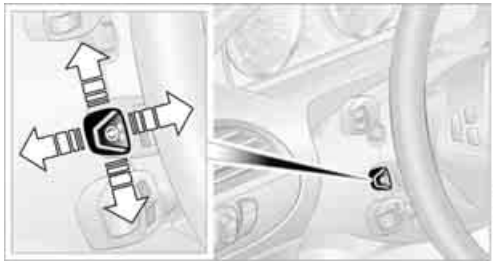
This feature is controlled by two photocells in the inside rearview mirror, one on the front and one on the back.

For trouble-free operation, keep the photocells clean and do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield. Do not attach stickers of any kind to the windshield in front of the mirror, either.

Steering wheel

Adjusting

Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident as the result of unexpected movement.◀



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing the steering-wheel position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory, page 51.

Easy entry/exit

To facilitate entry and exit, the steering wheel temporarily moves into the uppermost position.

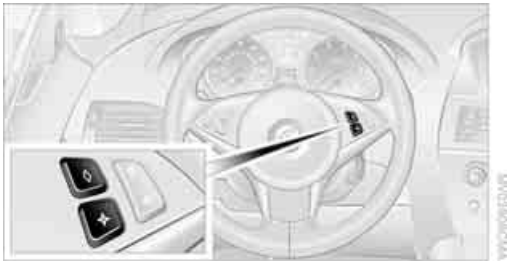
Steering wheel heating*

Press the button.

When the steering wheel heater is operating, the LED in the button lights up.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Programmable buttons* on steering wheel



You can program the buttons individually.

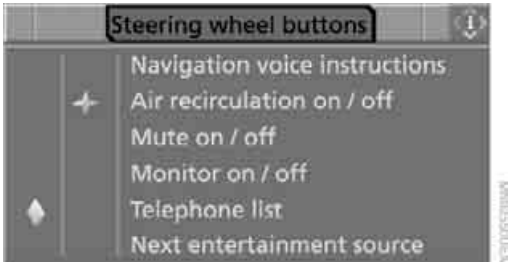
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

CarManuals2.com

3. "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Steering wheel buttons" and press the controller.



A list of different functions appears:

- ▷ "Navigation voice instructions"
  Voice messages from the navigation system*
- ▷ "Air recirculation on / off"
  To permanently shut off outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control on page 113
- ▷ "Mute on / off"
  To mute the audio sources
- ▷ "Monitor on / off"
  To switch the Control Display on/off
- ▷ "Telephone list"*
  To show/hide the phone book or last displayed list of stored phone numbers
- ▷ "Next entertainment source"
  To change the audio source
- ▷ "Night Vision on / off"
  To switch BMW Night Vision* on/off

5. Select the desired function unit and press the controller.
6. Select the button if necessary and press the controller.

You can operate the selected function using the corresponding button.

Operating function

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

If you have programmed "Navigation voice instructions" for one of the buttons:

- ▷ To switch voice instructions on/off:
  Press button longer.
- ▷ To repeat the last voice instruction:
  Press the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, otherwise they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g. by opening the doors.◀

Children always in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or with a height under 5 ft/150 cm may only be transported in the rear in child restraint systems which correspond to the age, weight and height of the child. Otherwise there is an increased danger of injury in an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, size and weight.

Exception for front passenger seat

Should it be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front, knee and side airbags on the passenger side must be deactivated before doing so. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child if the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint system.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags, refer to page 96.

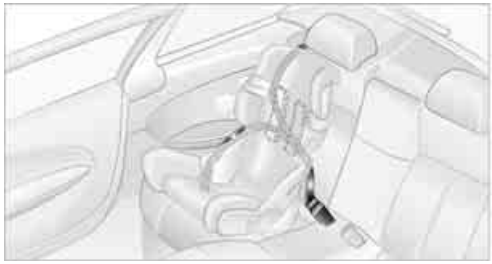
Installing child restraint systems

Follow child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for the selection, installation and use of child restraint systems. Otherwise, the degree of protection they offer may be reduced.◀

On front passenger seat

After mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated, as otherwise there is an increased risk of injury if the airbags are triggered.◀

Child seat security



All rear safety belts and the safety belt for the front passenger can be locked against pulling out to secure child restraint systems.

Locking safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
3. Allow the belt webbing to retract and pull taut against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to retract completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

CarManuals2.com

LATCH: Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

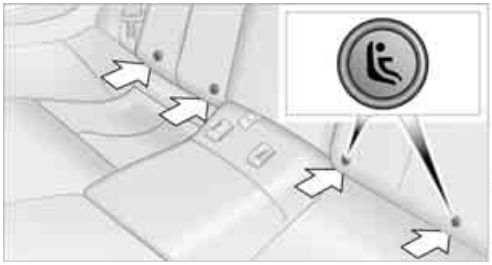
Follow the system manufacturer's instructions on installation and use of LATCH child restraint systems in order not to impair their protective function.◀

Anchor points for LATCH mounts

Before attaching the LATCH child's seat, pull the belt away from the region of the child restraint fixing system.

Make sure that both of the lower LATCH mounts have properly clicked into place and that the child restraint system is resting snugly against the backrest. Otherwise, the protective action may be impeded.◀

Rear seats

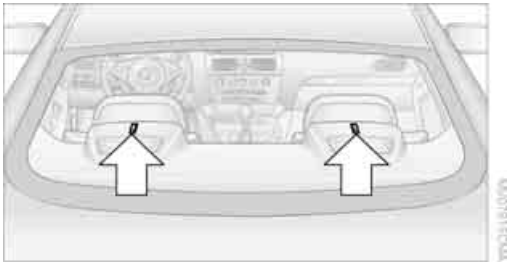


The mounting points for the LATCH anchors are located at the positions indicated by arrows in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Coupe: child restraint system with tether strap

Only use the top tether-strap mounting points to secure child restraint systems, otherwise the mounting points could be damaged.◀

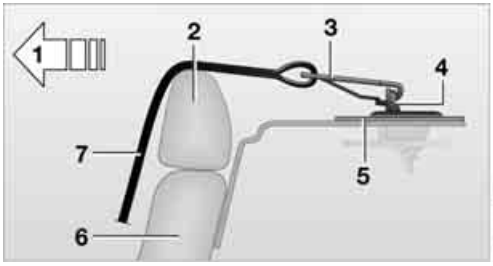
CarManuals2.com



There are two additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap, refer to arrows.

Placement of tether strap

Make sure that the tether strap is not routed over sharp edges and does not twist on its way to the upper mounting point; otherwise, the belt may not properly secure the child restraint system in the event of an accident.◀



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraints
3 Tether strap hook
4 Mounting point
5 Rear window shelf
6 Backrest
7 Tether strap of child restraint system

Before using the mounting points, fold the head restraint* into its raised position.

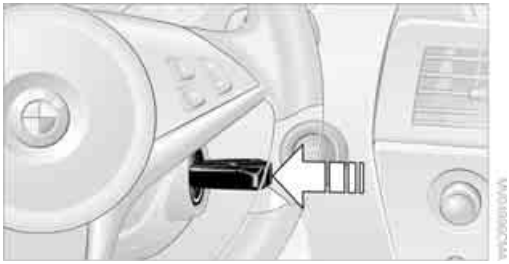
1. Slide the head restraint into the bottom position.
2. Guide the tether strap over the head restraint.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the mounting point.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Driving

Ignition lock

Inserting remote control into ignition lock



Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.

Radio readiness switches on.
Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation.

Comfort access*

With comfort access, only insert the remote control into the ignition lock in exceptional cases, refer to page 38.

CarManuals2.com

Removing remote control from ignition lock

Do not pull the remote control out of the ignition lock using force, as otherwise damage may result.◀

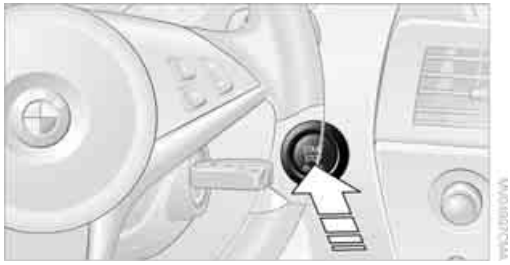
Before removing the remote control, first press it in as far as possible to release the locking device.

The ignition is switched off if it was still switched on.

Sport automatic transmission

The remote control can only be removed when transmission position P is selected: interlock.

Start/Stop button



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the radio readiness or the ignition on and off.

The engine is started when you press the Start/Stop button and depress the clutch if your vehicle is equipped with the manual transmission or the brake if your vehicle is equipped with the sport automatic transmission.◀

Radio readiness

Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The time and outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is switched off:

- when the remote control is removed from the ignition lock
- with comfort access* by touching the surface on the door handle, refer to Locking on page 39

Ignition on

All electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The odometer and the trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page 76.

Please switch off the ignition and the electronic systems/consumers which are not required when the engine is not running to save the battery.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Radio readiness and ignition switched off

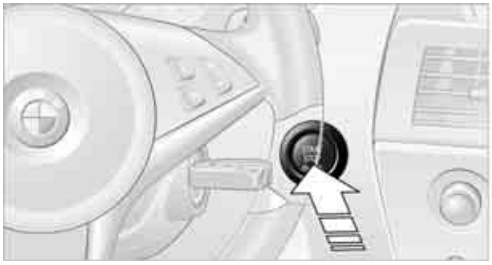
All indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

Starting engine

Do not run the engine in closed rooms, otherwise the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause unconsciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running, as such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.
Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, select the idling position, or shift the transmission into position P and firmly apply the handbrake, otherwise the vehicle can begin to roll.◀

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession or repeated starting attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or inadequately burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀

Do not allow the engine to warm up by leaving it running while the vehicle remains stationary. Instead, begin to drive at a moderate engine speed.



Manual transmission

Remote control in ignition lock or with comfort access in vehicle, refer to page 38.

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into idling position.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Sport automatic transmission*

Remote control in ignition lock or with comfort access in vehicle, refer to page 38.

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

CarManuals2.com

Switching engine off

When leaving the vehicle, always take the remote control with you.
When parking, firmly apply the handbrake, as otherwise the vehicle could roll.◀

Manual transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button with the vehicle stopped.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Firmly apply the handbrake.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 60.

Sport automatic transmission*

1. Shift transmission into position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
3. Firmly apply the handbrake.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 60.

Before driving into a car wash

The vehicle can roll if you proceed according to the following steps:

1. With comfort access: insert the remote control into the ignition lock.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Shift into transmission position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

Transmission position P will be engaged:

▷ after approx. 30 seconds

▷ if you remove the remote control from the ignition lock

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Handbrake

The handbrake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Indicator lamp

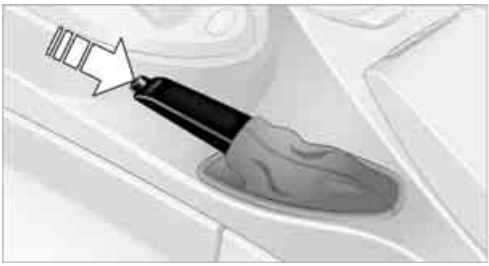
The indicator lamp lights up, and a signal sounds when you drive away. The handbrake is applied.

Indicator lamp for Canadian models.

Applying

The lever locks in position automatically.

Releasing



Pull slightly upwards, press the button and lower the lever.

If exceptional circumstances should make it necessary to apply the handbrake while the vehicle is in motion, do not pull it too firmly. In doing so, continuously press the button of the handbrake lever. Otherwise, too firm an application of the handbrake can lock up the rear wheels and cause the rear of the vehicle to swerve.◀

To prevent corrosion and one-sided braking action, occasionally apply the handbrake lightly when the vehicle is slowly coming to a stop if the traffic conditions are suitable. The brake lamps do not light up when the handbrake is applied.◀

CarManuals2.com

Manual transmission

While shifting in the 5th/6th gear lane, press the gearshift lever toward the right, otherwise accidental shifting into the 3rd or 4th gear could result in engine damage.◀

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. When pressing the gearshift lever to the left, overcome some resistance.

Sport automatic transmission*

In addition to the fully automatic mode, you can also shift manually with Steptronic, refer to page 63.

You can also choose between two driving programs: Normal or Sport, refer to Dynamic Driving Control.

Transmission positions

P R N D M/S + –

Displays in instrument cluster

P, R, N, D, S1 through S6, M1 through M6

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

The transmission mode and the currently selected gear are displayed.

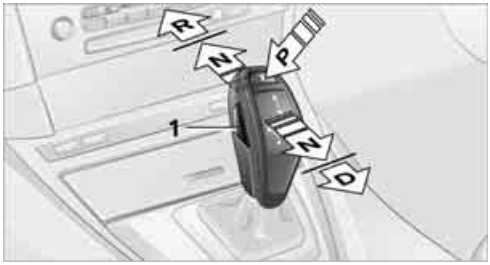
Engaging transmission position

▷ Do not leave the transmission position P until the engine is running: interlock.

▷ With the vehicle stationary, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of P or N; otherwise the shift command will not be executed: shiftlock.

⚠ To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.◀

Engaging N, D, R

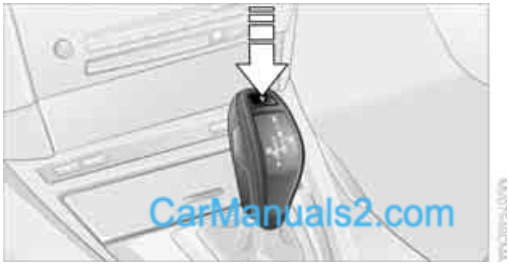


Briefly press the selector lever in the desired direction, beyond a resistance point if necessary. Press button **1** simultaneously out of P or into R.

The engaged transmission position is also displayed on the selector lever.

The selector lever immediately returns to the center position when released.

Engaging P



Press button **P**.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The rear wheels are locked.

▷ P is engaged as soon as you switch off the engine unless N is engaged and with comfort access, the remote control is inserted in the ignition lock, refer to Before driving into a car wash, page 61.◀

N Neutral

Can, for example, be engaged in automatic car washes. The vehicle can roll.

▷ N remains engaged even after the engine is switched off whenever you leave the remote control in the ignition lock. This function is useful, for example, in automatic car washes, refer to page 61.◀

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are available.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables you to achieve maximum performance.
Press the accelerator pedal beyond the increased resistance at full throttle.

Sport program and manual mode M/S

Press the selector lever toward the left from transmission position D:
The sport program is activated and S1 through S6 is displayed in the instrument cluster. This

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

When the selector lever is pressed forward or back, the manual mode is activated and the Steptronic shifts the gear. The instrument cluster shows M1 through M6.

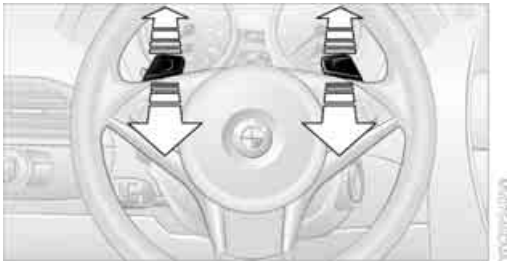
Upshifts and downshifts are only carried out at a suitable engine and vehicle speed, e.g. a downshift is not carried out at excessively high engine speeds. The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

To resume automatic mode, press the selector lever to the right.

Shift paddles on steering wheel

You can also shift manually with two shift paddles on the steering wheel. The shift paddles allow you to shift gears quickly, as both hands can remain on the steering wheel.

- When you use the shift paddles on the steering wheel to shift gears in automatic mode, the gearshift system switches into the manual mode.
- If you do not shift with the shift paddles and do not accelerate for a certain time, the system switches into the automatic mode again when the selector lever is in D.



- To shift up: pull one of the shift paddles.
- To shift down: press one of the shift paddles.

Dynamic Driving Control

CarManuals2.com

The Dynamic Driving Control makes it possible for your BMW to react in an even more performance-oriented manner at the push of a button:

- The speed range of the engine is optimally utilized.
- Gearshifts are faster.
- The engine responds more spontaneously to accelerator pedal movements.
- The steering will operate in an even sportier mode.
- In the automatic mode, the 6th gear is not engaged.

Activating system

Press the SPORT button.
The LED in the button lights up and SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Deactivating system

- Press the SPORT button again
- Engage reverse gear
- Switch off engine

The LED in the button and SPORT in the instrument cluster go out.

Manually unlocking and locking transmission lock

In case of a power failure, e.g. when the battery is drained or disconnected, or an electrical fault, manually release the transmission lock, as otherwise the rear wheels are blocked and the vehicle cannot be towed.

Only manually release the transmission lock for towing and firmly apply the handbrake beforehand so that the vehicle cannot roll. Reengage the transmission lock after parking the vehicle at its destination.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Releasing

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve over the selector lever.

3. Reach into the trim-piece opening, arrow **1**, and firmly pull the trim piece upward, arrow **2**.

CarManuals2.com

4. Remove cover over the opening, refer to 5.
5. Insert a screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 231, into the opening, arrow **1**.

6. Pull the screwdriver toward the rear until it is heard to engage, arrow **2**, and leave it inserted in the opening. The transmission lock is released.

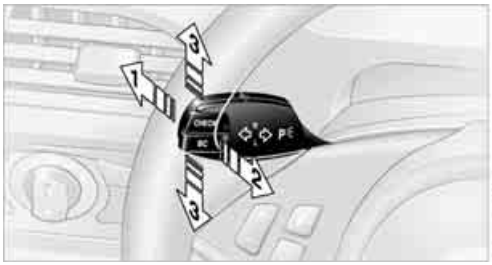
Locking

1. Pull out the screwdriver upward.
   The transmission lock is locked again.

2. Reinstall the cover and the trim piece.

Information on jump starting and towing from page 236.

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

▷ Atypically rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates the failure of a turn signal lamp.◀

Signaling briefly

Press lever to resistance point and hold for as long as you wish to signal.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point; the turn signal flashes three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Triple turn signal" and press the controller.
   Triple turn signaling is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Wiper system

1 Switching on wipers
2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
3 Activating/deactivating rain sensor
4 Cleaning windshield, headlamps and BMW Night Vision camera*
5 Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Switching on wipers

Pull the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.
The system reverts to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

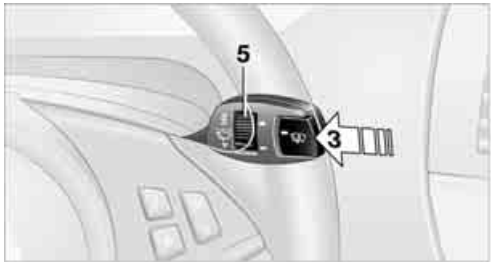
Fast wiper speed

Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.
The system reverts to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Rain sensor

The wiper operation is controlled automatically as a function of the rain intensity. The rain sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating rain sensor



Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Turn the knurled wheel **5**.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**. The LED goes out.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper operation.◀

Cleaning windshield, headlamps and BMW Night Vision camera*

Pull the lever, arrow **4**.

The system sprays washer fluid against the windshield and activates the wipers for a brief period.

With the vehicle lighting switched on, the headlamps and the BMW Night Vision camera are also cleaned simultaneously at suitable intervals.

Do not use the washing mechanisms if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do so, your vision could be obscured. To avoid freezing, use a washer fluid antifreeze, refer to Washer fluid. Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are heated when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Washer fluid

Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. For this reason, keep it away from ignition sources and store only in the closed original container out of reach of children. Otherwise, there is the danger of bodily injury. Always observe the instructions for use provided on the containers.◀

Filler neck for washer fluid

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

In order to maintain the mixture ratio, mix the washer fluid before filling.◀

Capacity

Capacity approx. 5.3 US quarts/5 liters.

Cruise control*

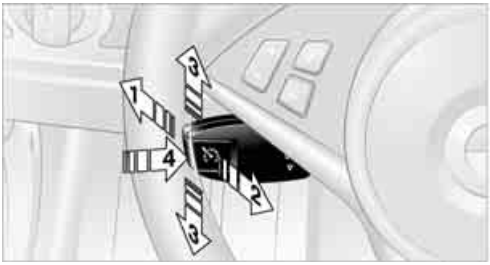
The concept

The cruise control is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h and higher. The vehicle stores and maintains the speed that you set using the lever mounted on the steering column. To maintain the specified speed, the system brakes if the engine braking effect is not sufficient on a downhill grade. Speed can drop on uphill grades if the engine output is insufficient.

Do not use the cruise control under driving conditions that do not permit a constant speed, e.g. when driving on winding roads, in heavy traffic or in poor road conditions such as snow, rain, ice, loose road surface, and poor visibility. Otherwise you could loose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◀

CarManuals2.com

One lever for all functions



1 Maintaining, storing and increasing speed
2 Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating
3 Interrupting and deactivating system
4 Resuming stored speed

Maintaining, storing and increasing speed

Press lever to resistance point, arrow **1**:
The speed currently being driven is maintained and stored. The display **1** in the speedometer, see below, indicates this regulated speed. Every time you press the lever, the vehicle's speed increases by roughly 1 mph/1 km/h.

Press lever to resistance point for a longer time:
The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system maintains and stores your current speed as soon as you release the lever.

Press the lever beyond the resistance point:
The speed is increased to the next fives position in the mph display or the next tens position in the km/h display.

Press and hold the lever beyond the resistance point:
The vehicle accelerates more quickly.

Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

Pull the lever, arrow **2**:
Functions are the same as **1**; the speed is reduced.

Interrupting system

Press the lever up or down, arrow **3**.

the display **1** in the speedometer changes color.

In addition, the system is interrupted:

- ▷ when you apply the brakes, even with the handbrake
- ▷ when you shift very slowly, when you shift the manual transmission into idling mode, or when you shift the automatic transmission into the N position
- ▷ when DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated
- ▷ when the DSC comes on

Resuming stored speed

Press button **4**:
The stored speed is resumed and maintained.

Deactivating system

- ▷ Press the lever up or down twice, arrow **3**
- ▷ Switch off the ignition

The speed stored in the memory is deleted.

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Stored speed
2 Selected speed is displayed briefly

Active cruise control*

With active cruise control you can select a desired speed which is then automatically maintained when driving on open roadways and is varied to maintain a selected distance setting to slower moving vehicles ahead.

CarManuals2.com

Active cruise control represents a technological advance over the familiar cruise control and is a

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

welcome relief from the constant adjustment of speed that can accompany driving in traffic on freeways or other high-speed thoroughfares. Especially on longer trips and in traffic congestion, the system can reduce fatigue and tension, while increasing your enjoyment of driving. Please use it safely and responsibly.

CarManuals2.com

In addition to holding a steady cruising speed, if you encounter slower vehicles ahead, active cruise control will, within limits, adjust your vehicle's speed automatically so that you can flow with the traffic without having to make constant adjustments. If, for example, while cruising at the selected speed, you begin to approach a slower vehicle ahead of you in the same lane, the system will reduce your vehicle's speed to the same as that of the vehicle ahead to maintain your selected distance setting. You can vary the following distance, which will vary with speed. Based on your selected distance setting, the system automatically decreases the throttle setting and lightly applies the brakes if necessary. In addition, if the vehicle ahead of you slows to a complete stop, the system can follow this action within the given scope and can also accelerate from a complete stop if the vehicle ahead of you drives off again shortly thereafter. During braking, your vehicle brake lamps will automatically illuminate to alert a following driver to take action. In addition, it may be necessary for your vehicle to downshift the automatic transmission to maintain the distance setting selected. As soon as the road in front of you has no moving vehicles, the system will accelerate to your desired speed. This set speed is also maintained on downhill grades, however the vehicle speed can drop below the set speed when driving uphill if the engine output is not sufficient.

Active cruise control cannot detect stop signs, red lights, or any object that is stopped or is blocking the road.
Active cruise control is not and must not be used as a collision avoidance/warning system. Since this active cruise control system is a new technology and operates differently from conventional cruise control systems which you may be accustomed to, it is necessary that you read all of the pages relating to this system before use. Carefully read and observe the information on the system limitations beginning on page 73 to obtain a good command of the system and its range of applications.◀

Brake pedal feel

When the system brakes and you also depress the brake pedal, a somewhat different braking feel results.

Professional* navigation system

If a navigation DVD is in the drive, refer to page 134, within limits the system adjusts the accelerating and braking behavior of the vehicle to the road you are driving on.

To ensure that the system is informed of the current course of the road, always use the latest navigation DVD if possible.◀

When the vehicle position is unknown, e.g. when you leave the map area, this influence of the navigation system is not available.

Applications

Please try the system first during sparse traffic and clear road conditions so that you can get used to the system. After you have experience and understand the system, only then use it during normal traffic.

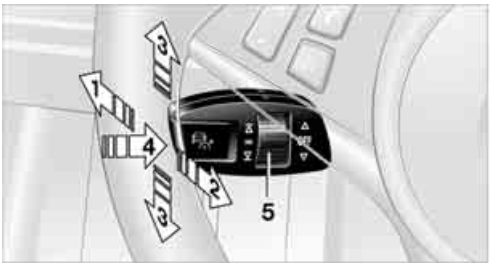
As with conventional cruise control systems, active cruise control in no way reduces or substitutes for the driver's own personal experience, responsibility, alertness and awareness in adjusting speed, braking or otherwise controlling the vehicle. The driver should decide when to use the system on the basis of road, traffic, visibility, and weather conditions. Active cruise control is intended for use on highway-type roadways where traffic is moving relatively smoothly as well as in slow-moving traffic. Do not use the system in city driving; in complex driving situations; heavy traffic such as during rush hour; on curvy, winding roads, slippery roads or roads with sharp curves such as highway off-ramps; during inclement weather such as snow, strong rain or fog; or when entering interchanges, service/parking areas or toll

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

booths. It is also important to regulate your vehicle's speed and distance setting within applicable legal limits. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary, especially when the system is actively following a vehicle in front of you. Otherwise, driving conditions can result which lead to a violation of the law or elevated risk of an accident.

The minimum initial activation speed is 20 mph/ 30 km/h, and the maximum speed is 110 mph/ 180 km/h. However, you can also activate the system while stopped, refer to While stopped, page 71.

One lever for all functions



1 Storing and increasing desired speed

2 Storing and reducing desired speed

3 Interrupting, refer to page 71, or deactivating system, refer to page 72

4 Activating stored desired speed and distance, refer to page 71, or driving off, refer to While stopped, page 71

5 Selecting distance to vehicle driving ahead, refer to page 70

Storing current speed

Tap the lever, arrow **1**, or briefly pull it, arrow **2**.

CarManuals2.com

The system stores the current vehicle speed. It is indicated on the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

Increasing desired speed

Press or tap the lever to the resistance point or beyond, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is displayed.
The speed then displayed is stored and achieved on a clear road.

▷ Each time the lever is tapped to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.

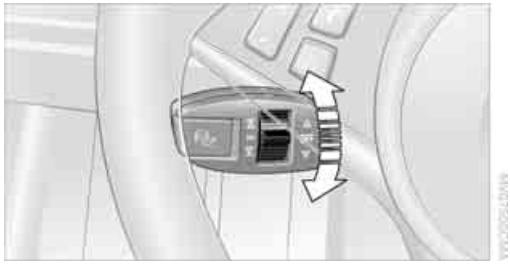
▷ Each time the lever is tapped beyond the resistance point, the desired speed increases to the next fives position in the mph speedometer display or the next tens position in the km/h speedometer display.

Reducing desired speed

Pull the lever, arrow **2**, until the desired speed is displayed.

These functions are operated in the same manner as increasing your desired speed.

Selecting distance



▷ Briefly press rocker switch downward: Increase distance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

▷ Briefly press rocker switch upward: Reduce distance.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Distance 1

CarManuals2.com

Distance 2

Distance 3

Distance 4
This distance is set when you activate the system.

Use good judgment to select the appropriate following distance, given road conditions, traffic, applicable laws and State driving recommendations for safe following distance. Otherwise, a violation of the law or risk of an accident could result.◀

Interrupting cruise control

Press the lever upward or downward, and with the vehicle stopped also depress the brake pedal. The marking in the speedometer changes color and the distance indicator goes out.

In addition, the system is automatically interrupted:

▷ when you apply the vehicle brakes

▷ when you shift the transmission

▷ when DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated

▷ when DSC comes on

▷ when you apply the handbrake

▷ when you release the safety belt and open the driver's door with the vehicle stopped

▷ when the system does not recognize any objects for an extended period of time, e.g. on infrequently traveled roads without a shoulder or guard rails, or if the radar sensor is covered with dirt, refer to page 72

If the system is interrupted, then it is necessary for the driver to actively intervene by braking and steering. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.◀

Resuming stored desired speed and distance

While driving

Press button **4**.
The displays appear in the instrument cluster.

While stopped

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, engage position P of the automatic transmission and apply the handbrake. Otherwise the vehicle can roll.◀

If a detected vehicle in front of you brakes to a complete stop and your vehicle has also been braked to a complete stop by the system:

▷ If the vehicle in front of you drives off while the marking **1** for the desired speed in the speedometer is green, your vehicle will accelerate without you having to do anything.

▷ If the vehicle in front of you drives off while the marking **1** is orange, you briefly depress the accelerator pedal or press button **4**. Rolling bars in the distance indicator **3** mean that the vehicle in front of you has driven off.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

If you are stopped behind a vehicle with the brake pedal depressed and the system is interrupted or deactivated:

1. Press button **4** to activate a stored desired speed or select a desired speed with the lever, arrow **1** or arrow **2**.
2. Release the brake pedal.
3. If the vehicle in front of you drives off, briefly depress the accelerator pedal or press button **4**.

CarManuals2.com

Deactivating system

▷ Press the lever upward or downward twice while driving.

▷ When stopped, do the same with the brake pedal depressed.

▷ Switch off the ignition.

The displays turn off, and the stored desired speed and distance are deleted.

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Stored desired speed

▷ Green: the system is active.

▷ Orange: the system is interrupted.

2 Lights up yellow: vehicle detected ahead
Display also used for warnings, please read all information on warnings

3 Selected distance to vehicle ahead
The indicator lights up as soon as the system is activated

The bars roll: the vehicle in front of you has driven off

4 Brief display of stored desired speed

▷ If the display --- mph/--- km/h appears briefly, the conditions necessary for operation may currently not be met.◀

Warning lamps

The indicator **2** continuously flashes yellow.
The prerequisites for operating the system are no longer met, e.g. as a result of ABS or DSC interventions. The system brakes until you actively take over.

The indicator **2** flashes red; a signal sounds.
The system indicates that you must brake and/or maneuver the vehicle yourself. The system cannot automatically restore the distance to the vehicle driving ahead.
However, this display cannot relieve the driver of the responsibility for adjusting the desired speed and driving style to the traffic conditions.

Radar sensors

1 Long-range sensor

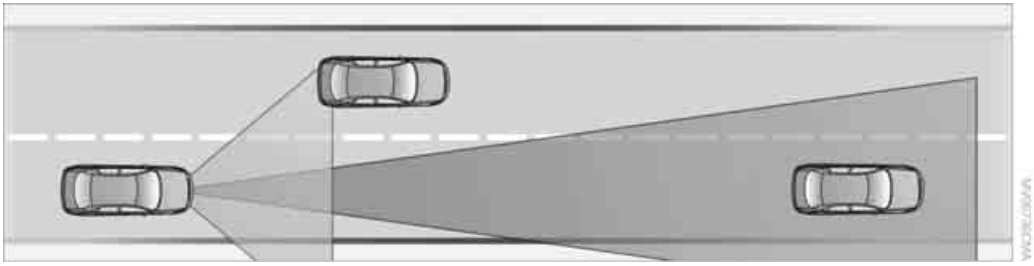
2 Location of the short-range sensors behind the bumper

Heavy rain and also dirt, snow or ice can limit the detection of vehicles ahead. If needed, clean the radar sensor under the front bumper as well as the bumper area covering the short range sensors. When doing so, be particularly careful in removing layers of snow and ice.
Do not apply adhesive labels etc. in the area of the short-range sensors.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

If the sensor is not aligned properly, e.g. due to damage, the active cruise control cannot be activated.

System limitations



As with conventional cruise control systems, active cruise control in no way diminishes or substitutes for the driver's own personal responsibility, alertness and awareness in adjusting speed, braking or otherwise controlling the vehicle. The driver should decide when to use the system on the basis of road, traffic, visibility, and weather conditions. Active cruise control is intended for use on freeway-type roadways where traffic is moving relatively smoothly. Do not use this system in city driving; in complex driving situations, on curvy, winding roads, slippery roads or roads with sharp curves such as highway off-ramps; during inclement weather such as snow, strong rain or fog; or when entering interchanges, service/parking areas or toll booths. It is also important to regulate your vehicle's speed and distance setting within applicable legal limits. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary, especially when the system is actively following a vehicle in front of you.◀

Always remember that the range and ability of the system do have physical limitations. For example, the system may not detect vehicles driving ahead if they suddenly brake heavily in stop-and-go traffic during acceleration. The system will not apply the brakes or slow your vehicle when a very slow-moving vehicle, stopped vehicle or stationary object is in the lane ahead of you, for example when approaching a traffic light or parked vehicle or when a vehicle is stalled in your lane. Also, the system does not react to oncoming traffic, pedestrians or other types of potential traffic such as a rider on a horseback. It is also possible that the system may not detect smaller moving objects such as motorcycles or bicycles. Be especially alert when encountering any of these situations as the system will neither automatically brake, nor provide a warning to you. Also, be aware that every decrease in the distance setting allows your vehicle to come closer to a vehicle in front of you and requires a heightened amount of alertness.◀

CarManuals2.com

The system cannot allow the vehicle to drive off automatically in situations that make driving off considerably more difficult, e.g. on steep uphill grades, with a heavy trailer or before raised areas in the road.

Near radio astronomy stations, the system radar is deactivated at speeds under 20 mph/30 km/h due to legal regulations.

Be certain to interrupt the system when you pull into an exit lane for a highway offramp.◀

Also, vehicles traveling in a staggered manner on a highway may cause a delay in the system's reaction to a vehicle in front of you or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in the lane next to you. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary.

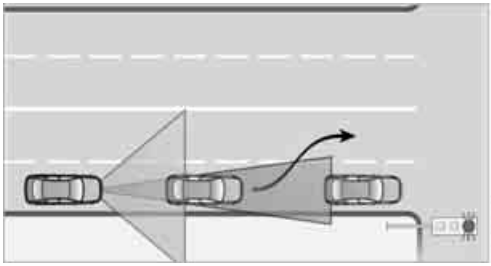
In addition, the system is interrupted whenever the driver applies the vehicle brakes, shifts the transmission from drive/D to neutral/N, or deactivates DSC. After any inter-

ruption, the system will no longer automatically activate the vehicle brakes, which means the driver must intervene and resume manual braking. You should then reactivate the system only when you are fully aware of the prior speed and distance settings.◀

Active cruise control may brake when you reduce the stored desired speed; however, the driver must constantly monitor traffic and intervene if necessary.

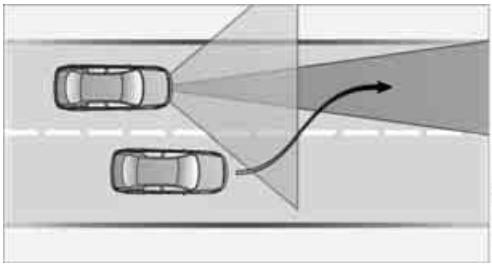
When you switch off the engine or ignition, active cruise control is fully switched off, too, and any settings you have selected are canceled.

Unexpected lane change



If a vehicle in front of you is behind a stopped vehicle and unexpectedly changes lanes, you must react yourself, as the system does not react to stopped vehicles.

Swerving vehicles

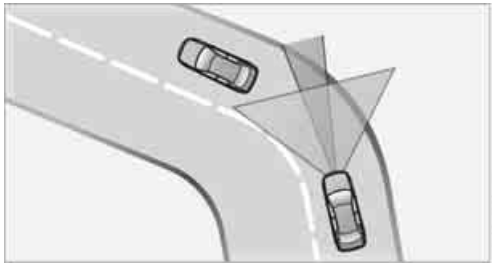


When a vehicle swerves out of adjacent lanes into your lane, the system does not detect the vehicle until it is completely in your lane.

⚠ When a vehicle ahead suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to restore the selected distance automatically.

This also applies to great differences in speed between your vehicle and vehicles ahead, e.g. when quickly approaching a truck. Once the system has established that a vehicle is indeed in front of you, it will indicate that you must brake and/or maneuver the vehicle yourself. Take action yourself, otherwise there is a risk of an accident.◀

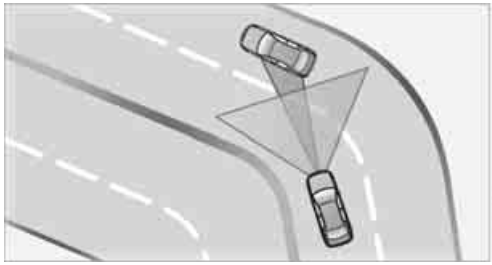
Behavior in curves



If the selected desired speed for a curve is too high, the system reduces the speed within a curve. However, it cannot detect curves in advance. Therefore, select a suitable speed at the start of a curve.

Because of the limited range of the system, it is possible that in curves or on the peaks and valleys of hilly roads, a vehicle ahead may be recognized late, or not at all. Therefore, it is up to the driver to select a speed that is prudent in view of the curves and terrain of the roadway.

CarManuals2.com



In approaching a curve, it is possible that active cruise control might react briefly to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. In addition, the system can sense if your vehicle is in a curve and may not accelerate. If your vehicle decelerates in either case, you can choose to overcome the deceleration by briefly pressing the accelerator pedal.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Driver interventions and your responsibility

Anytime the driver presses down on the accelerator pedal, any braking action by the system is interrupted and the distance indicator goes out until the pedal is fully released. As soon as you fully release the accelerator, the system will again control your cruising speed and distance setting. While driving with the system activated, resting your foot on the accelerator pedal will cause the system not to brake even when necessary. Be certain that floormats or other objects on the vehicle floor do not interfere with movement of the accelerator pedal.◀

While active cruise control is capable of braking your vehicle automatically when you approach a slower vehicle ahead, it is important to be aware that the ability of the system to apply the brakes is also limited, e.g. when you reduce your desired speed sharply. It uses only a portion of braking system capacity and does not utilize the full capacity of the vehicle braking system. Therefore, the system cannot decrease your speed due to large differences in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Example: when you approach a vehicle traveling at a much lower speed than your own speed such as approaching a toll booth or when a much slower vehicle cuts in front of you at close range.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Everything under control

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock, date

1 Time, outside temperature and date

2 Odometer and trip odometer

3 Press button:

- ▷ with ignition switched on, trip odometer is reset
- ▷ with ignition switched off, time, outside temperature, and odometer are briefly displayed.

From radio readiness the outside temperature and the time are displayed.

To request the date:
Press the CHECK button in the turn signal lever, refer to page 82.

Time and date setting, refer to page 84.

You can set the unit of measure °F or °C on the Control Display, refer to Units of measure on page 86.

Outside temperature warning

If the display drops to +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. There is an increased danger of ice.

⚠ Even at temperatures above +37 °F / +3 °C ice can form. Therefore, drive carefully, e.g. on bridges and sections of road in the shade, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀

Tachometer

CarManuals2.com

Avoid engine speeds in the white-striped advance warning field, arrow **1**, if possible.

Be sure to avoid engine speeds in the red warning field, arrow **2**. At high revs in this range, the flow of fuel is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine become too hot, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level, refer to page 224.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Engine oil temperature*

The general operating temperature is between 160 °F /70 °C and approx. 340 °F /170 °C.
If the engine oil temperature is too high, a message appears in the Control Display.

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 18.5 US gal/ 70 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx. 2.6 US gal/10 liters. You will find information on refueling on page 212.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Reserve

After the reserve quantity has been reached, a message briefly appears on the Control Display; the remaining range is shown in the computer. Below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message remains on the Control Display.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Computer

Displays in instrument cluster

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The following information is displayed in the specified order:

- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption
- ▷ No information

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is projected based on the driving style over the last 20 miles/ 30 km.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

To reset average speed: press BC button on turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

To reset average fuel consumption: press BC button on turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

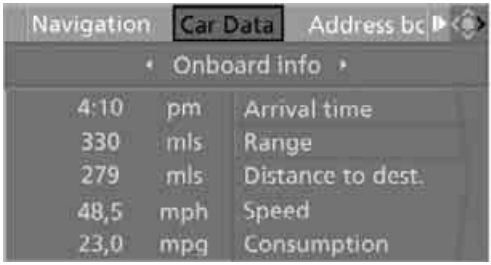
For different routes

You can display the average speed and average consumption for two different routes on the Control Display, refer to the following and to Trip computer.

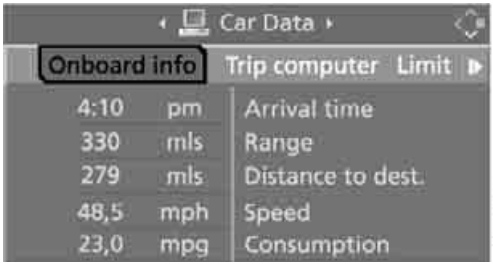
Displays on Control Display

You can also call up the computer via iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*: Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.



4. Select "Onboard info" and press the controller.



- Estimated time of arrival at destination and remaining distance:
  - Entering a distance manually in the computer, see below.
  - Entering a destination in the navigation system*, refer to page 136.
- Cruising range
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption

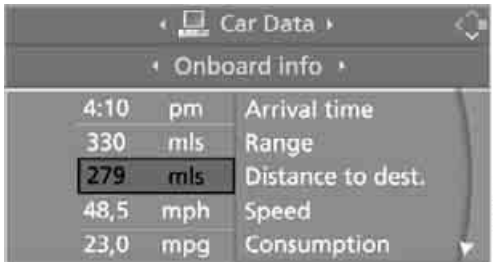
Resetting values

You can reset the values for the average speed and average fuel consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. To confirm your selection, press the controller again.

Entering a distance manually

1. Select "Distance to dest." and press the controller.



2. Turn the controller to select the distance to your destination.
3. Press the controller to apply the setting.

CarManuals2.com

The distance is automatically preset during the destination guidance of the navigation system*.

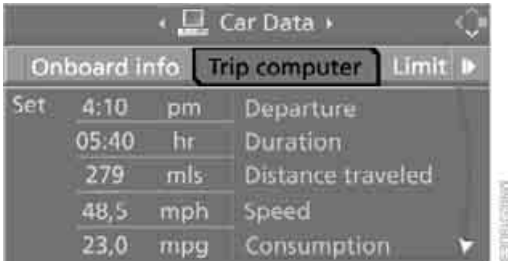
Trip computer

The trip computer is suitable, for example, for a vacation trip.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*: Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

4. Select "Trip computer" and press the controller.



- ▷ Departure time
- ▷ Driving time
- ▷ Distance traveled
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption

Switching trip computer on/off and resetting all values:

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item and press the controller.

Display options

You can display the computer or the trip computer in the assistance window.

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Onboard info"
   - ▷ "Trip computer".

CarManuals2.com

3. Press the controller.

Service requirements

The remaining driving distance and the date for the next maintenance are displayed briefly with the ignition switched on.

▷ Your BMW Service Advisor can determine your vehicle's current service requirements by reading out the data stored in the remote control.◀

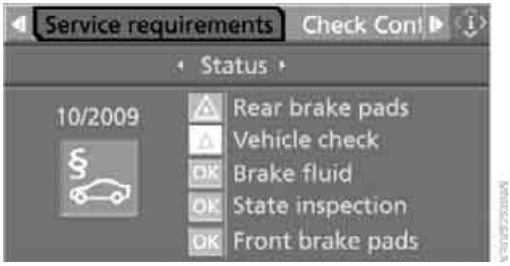
Additional information

You can view more detailed information by using the Control Display, for operating principle refer to page 16.

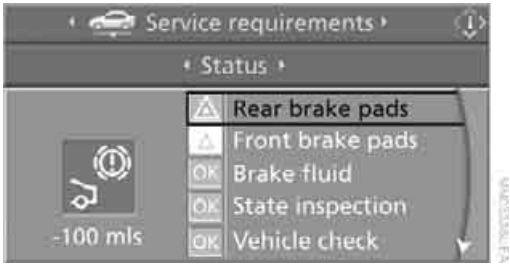
1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Status" and press the controller.

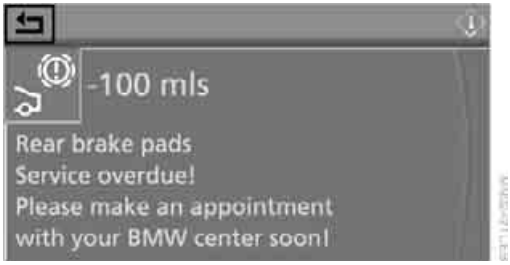


The display shows a list of selected service and maintenance procedures, as well as legally mandated official inspections.

CarManuals2.com

You can request more detailed information on every entry.

Select the entry and press the controller.



To exit from the menu:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Symbols

OK No service is currently required.

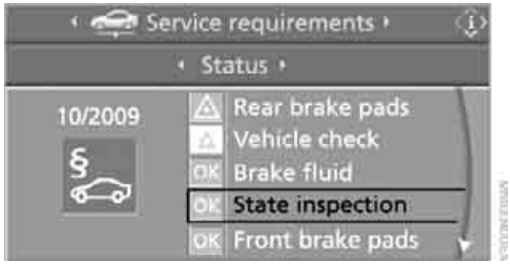
The deadline for service or an official inspection is approaching. Please arrange a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

Entering deadlines for legally required inspections*

Make sure the date on the Control Display is set correctly, refer to page 85; otherwise, the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Status" and press the controller.
7. Select "State inspection" and press the controller.



8. Select "Set service date" and press the controller. The month is selected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

9. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.

10. Press the controller to apply the setting.
    The year is selected.
11. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
12. Press the controller to apply the setting.
    The date entry is stored.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors functions in the vehicle and issues a message if there is a malfunction in the monitored systems. This kind of Check Control message consists of indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster, and if necessary an acoustic signal and text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

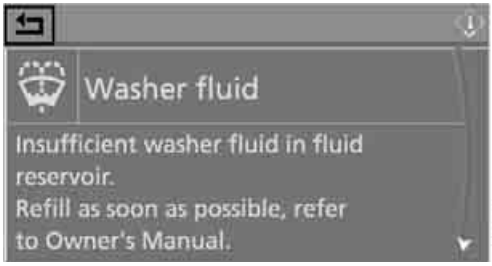
Indicator and warning lamps

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

⚠ This symbol means that a Check Control message has been generated. The symbol continues to be visible even when the Check Control message disappears after a short time. The warning lamps and text messages are stored and can be displayed later, also refer to page 82.

Explanatory text messages

Text message at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.



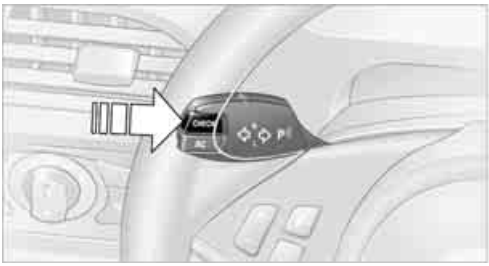
For most Check Control messages, you can view more information later, e.g. regarding the cause of a malfunction and how to respond; refer to the information provided below.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp lights up.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

To exit the displayed information:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Hiding Check Control messages



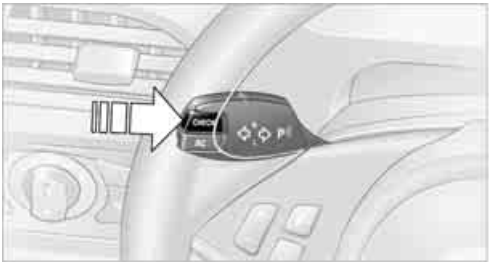
Press the CHECK button on turn signal lever.

Some Check Control messages are displayed until the malfunctions have been rectified. They cannot be hidden. If a number of malfunctions occur simultaneously, they are displayed in succession.

Other messages are hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but remain stored.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

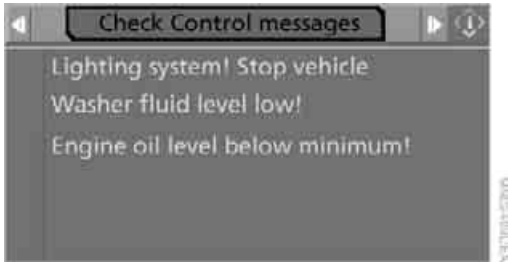
1. Press the button longer:
   The first stored message is displayed.



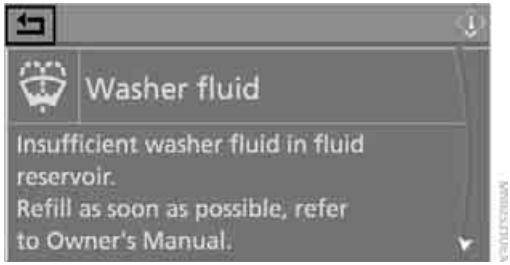
2. Press the button:
   When the button is pressed again, a different message is displayed.

3. Turn the controller until "Info sources" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Service Info" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Check Control messages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select a message and press the controller.



To exit from the menu immediately:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Displaying supplementary information

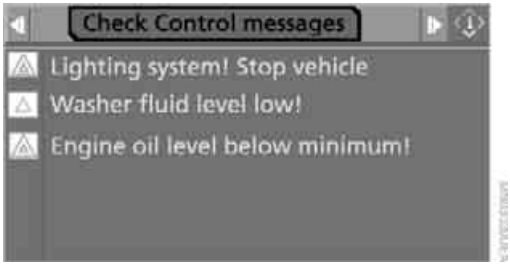
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Displaying the urgency of malfunctions



Depending on the equipment, the stored Check Control messages are also displayed with the following symbols:

OK No malfunctions detected in the monitored systems.

Malfunctions are present in the monitored systems. Depending on the malfunction, supplementary information is shown on the Control Display.

The symbols also indicate the status of the service requirements display, refer to page 79.

Displays after completion of trip

Malfunction reports generated during the trip are shown consecutively when you switch off the ignition.

CarManuals2.com

Before the display disappears, you can display the messages once again. Press the CHECK button for approx. 2 seconds. If several messages are present, you can continue to press the CHECK button to view them in succession.

The display goes out:

- ▷ after a short time
- ▷ when you press the CHECK button again for approx. 2 seconds

Speed limit

You can enter a speed and a Check Control message indicates when you have reached this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing limit

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*: Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Limit" and press the controller.

5. Select the speed value and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the limit.
7. Press the controller to apply the setting.
   The limit is activated.

Applying your current speed as limit

Select "Select current speed" and press the controller. The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating/deactivating limit

Select "On" and press the controller.
✔ The limit is activated.

Stopwatch

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*: Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

4. Select "Stopwatch" and press the controller.

Starting, stopping, or resetting

▷ Select "Start" and press the controller. The stopwatch starts at the displayed time.

▷ Select "Reset" and press the controller. The stopwatch is reset and it restarts if it was running beforehand.

▷ Select "Stop" and press the controller. This stops the timer.

Taking an intermediate time reading

Select "Interim time" and press the controller. The interim time appears below the ongoing primary stopwatch count.

CarManuals2.com

▷ All of the other functions remain available even while the stopwatch is running. The stopwatch continues operation in the background.◀

Settings on Control Display

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button once or twice until the start menu appears.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

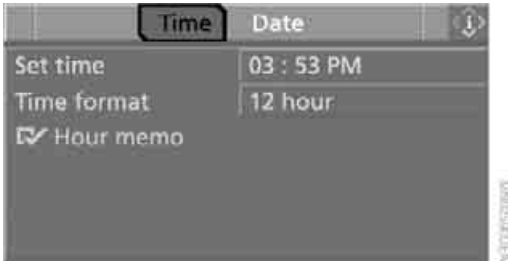
Setting time

1. Turn the controller until "Time / Date" is selected and press the controller.

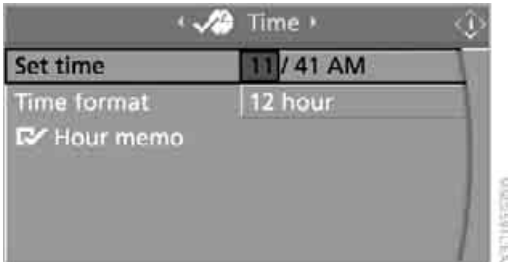
2. Move the controller forward once if necessary to change to the first field from the top.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

3. Turn the controller until "Time" is selected and press the controller.



4. Turn the controller until "Set time" is selected and press the controller.



Making settings

1. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
2. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

The changed time is stored.

Switching on hour signal*

You will hear three tones just before the top of each hour.

Select "Hour memo" and press the controller.
The hour signal is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting 12h/24h format

1. Select "Time format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting date

1. Select "Date" and press the controller.

2. Select "Set date" and press the controller. The first setting of the date display is selected.
3. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
4. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is selected.
5. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the date is stored.

Setting date format

1. Select "Date format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of Control Display

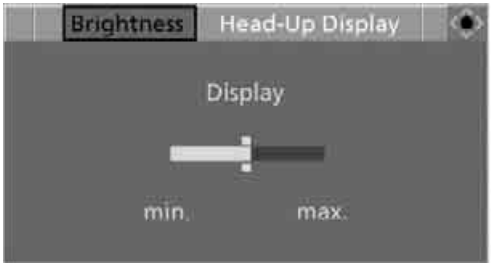
The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Brightness" is selected and press the controller.



6. If necessary, move the controller to the right to select "Display".
7. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

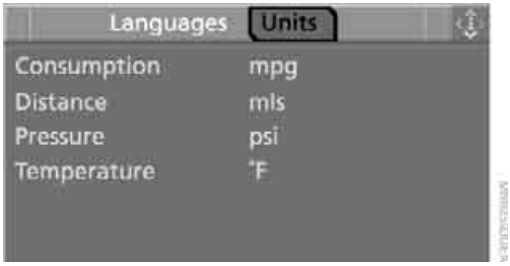
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Units of measure

You can change the units of measure for consumption, distances, temperature and pressure.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Units" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select the menu item to be set.
7. Press the controller.
8. Select the desired unit of measure and press the controller.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

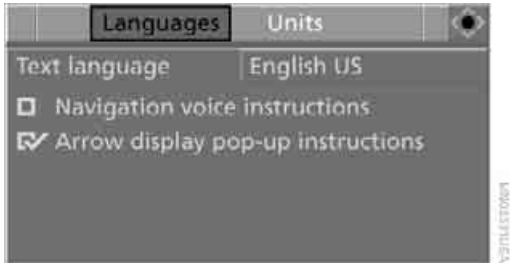
Language on Control Display

CarManuals2.com

You can change the language of the text displays.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Text language" and press the controller.
7. Select and activate the desired language by pressing the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Technology for comfort, convenience and safety

PDC Park Distance Control*

Carmanuals2.com

The concept

The PDC assists you when you are parking. Acoustic signals and an optical display* alert you to the approach of an object from behind your vehicle. To measure the distance, there are four ultrasonic sensors in each bumper. The range of these sensors is approx. 7 ft/2 m. However, an acoustic warning first sounds for the sensors at the front and at the two rear corners at approx. 24 in/60 cm, and for the center rear sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

⚠ PDC is a parking aid that can indicate the presence of objects when they are being approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed, otherwise the physical circumstances would mean that the system warning was too late.◀

Switching on automatically

The system starts to operate approx. one second after you shift into reverse or move the selector lever into position R with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Wait this short time before driving off.

Switching on manually

Press the button; the LED lights up.

Manual deactivation

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Automatic deactivation

After driving approx. 165 ft/50 m or at over approx. 20 mph/30 km/h, the system is switched off and the LED goes out. You can reactivate the system manually as needed.

Signal tones

When nearing an object, the position is correspondingly indicated by an interval tone. Thus, an object detected to the left rear of the vehicle will be indicated by a signal tone from the left rear speaker, etc. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ if you remain in front of an object that was only detected by one of the corner sensors
- ▷ if you drive parallel to a wall

Malfunction

The LED in the button flashes and a message appears on the Control Display. PDC is malfunctioning. Have the system checked.

To prevent this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. Do not spray the sensors with high-pressure cleaning jets for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm to them.

PDC with visual warning*

You can also have the system show distances to objects on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already shown there before

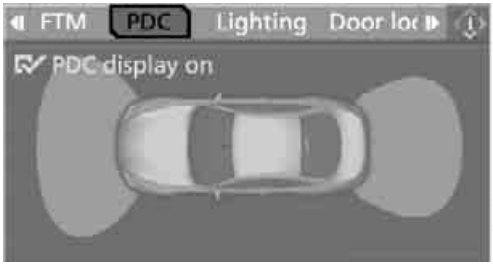
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

a signal tone sounds. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "Vehicle / Tires" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "PDC" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "PDC display on" and press the controller.
   The PDC screen is activated.

The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limits

Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstacles always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. The system is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with tow bars and trailer couplings, or thin and wedge-shaped objects etc. Low objects already displayed, e.g. curbs, can also disappear from the detection area of the sensors again before or after a continuous tone already sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected. For this reason, drive with care; otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury or property damage.
Loud sources of sound, inside and outside the vehicle, could drown out the PDC signal tone.◀

CarManuals2.com

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW is equipped with an extended array of systems designed to enhance and maintain vehicle stability under extreme conditions.

ABS Antilock Brake System

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

The ABS is operational every time you start the engine. For information on safe braking, refer to page 128.

CBC Cornering Brake Control

When braking during curves or when braking during a lane change, driving stability and steering response are improved further.

Electronic brake-force distribution

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system produces maximum braking force boosting and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking maneuvers. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

Adaptive brake assistant*

In conjunction with the active cruise control with the stop-and-go function, the adaptive brake assistant ensures that the brake responds even more quickly during braking with the brake assistant.

CarManuals2.com

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

DSC prevents traction loss in the driving wheels when starting off and accelerating. The system also identifies unstable driving conditions, such as a loss of traction at the rear of the vehicle or sliding of the vehicle in its front wheels. In these cases, DSC helps the vehicle maintain a safe course within physical limits by reducing engine output and through braking actions in the individual wheels.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not restrict the additional safety margin with a risky driving style, as otherwise there is a risk of an accident.◀

Deactivating DSC

Press the button until the DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds. DTC Dynamic Traction Control and DSC are deactivated together. Stabilizing and drive output promoting actions are no longer executed. The stability-promoting intervention of the active steering* is also deactivated, refer to page 95.

A message appears on the Control Display. Please note any supplementary information that appears there.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC

Press the button; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

For better control

The indicator lamp flashes:
DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.
The indicator lamp lights up:
DSC is deactivated.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

DTC is a version of DSC in which the drive output is optimized for particular road conditions, e.g. unplowed snow-covered roads. The system assures the maximal drive output, but with reduced driving stability. It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- ▷ When driving on snowy inclines, in slush, or on unplowed, snow-covered road surfaces
- ▷ When rocking a stuck vehicle free or starting off in deep snow or on loose ground
- ▷ When driving with snow chains*

Activating DTC

Press the button briefly; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

For better control

The indicator lamp flashes:
DTC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up:
DTC is activated.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

Malfunction in driving stability control systems

The warning lamp for the brake system lights up yellow, together with the indicator lamps for ABS, DSC, and for the Tire Pressure Monitor or Flat Tire Monitor. A message appears on the Control Display. The driving stability control systems have failed. While you may continue, you should remember to proceed cautiously and drive defensively while avoiding full brake applications. The Tire Pressure Monitor or the Flat Tire Monitor is also malfunctioning. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

The DSC indicator lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. A malfunction has occurred in the DSC and DTC. The stabilizing actions are no longer available. The vehicle remains operational. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

CarManuals2.com

The brake system warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. The brake assistant is defective. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

Starting assistant

The starting assistant enables you to start off conveniently on slopes. The handbrake is not required for this purpose.

1. Hold the vehicle with the brake.
2. Release the brake and begin to drive immediately.

After releasing the brake, begin to drive immediately; otherwise, the starting assistant no longer holds the vehicle after approx. 2 seconds and your vehicle will start to roll backward.◀

Dynamic Drive*

The concept

Dynamic Drive minimizes body roll and optimizes vehicle stability during cornering and evasive maneuvers.

Dynamic Drive is based on active stabilizers on the front and rear axles. Suspension compliance adapts to suit driving conditions, varying from performance-oriented during cornering to smooth and comfort-oriented when the vehicle is proceeding in a straight line. During vehicle operation, the system continuously runs through closed-loop control cycles lasting only fractions of a second.

The system assumes operational status each time you start the engine.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor*

The concept

The Flat Tire Monitor detects a pressure loss in one tire by comparing the speeds of the individual wheels during driving.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

In the event of a pressure loss, there is a change in the rolling circumference and therefore the rotation speed of the corresponding wheel. The system detects this change and reports it as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

CarManuals2.com

To ensure the reliable signaling of a flat tire, the system must be initialized at the correct tire inflation pressure.

▷ The initialization must be repeated after every correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

The Flat Tire Monitor cannot indicate sudden severe tire damage caused by outside factors and does not detect a natural, even pressure drop in all four tires.

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- ▷ System has not been initialized
- ▷ Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- ▷ Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ Driving with snow chains*

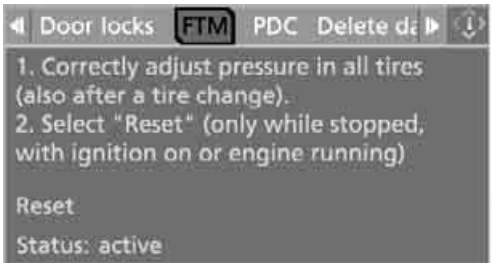
Initializing system

▷ The initialization finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically. The system is initialized after this activation phase. The system is not initialized when traveling with snow chains*.◀

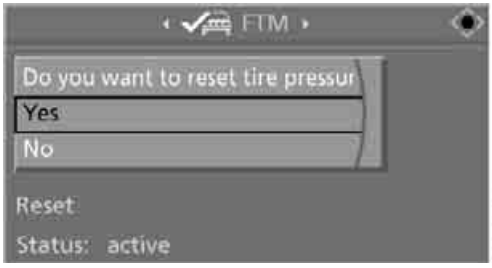
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "FTM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.
8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.



9. Start to drive.
   The message "resetting FTM ..." is displayed.

The initialization finishes during driving.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamp lights up red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Cautiously reduce the vehicle speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid severe braking and steering maneuvers and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   Stop driving if the vehicle is no longer equipped with run-flat tires, as it was when it came from the factory, refer to page 218. Continued driving after a flat tire can result in serious accidents.◀

2. At the next opportunity, check the air pressure in all four tires.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized.◀

3. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guide values:

   ▷ With a light load:
   1 to 2 persons without luggage:
   approx. 155 miles/250 km

   ▷ With a medium load:
   2 persons, cargo bay full, or
   4 persons without luggage:
   approx. 94 miles/150 km

   ▷ With a full load:
   4 persons, luggage compartment full:
   approx. 30 miles/50 km

   Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
   If unusual vibrations or loud noises occur while the vehicle is being driven, this can indicate final failure of the damaged tire. Reduce speed and stop at a suitable location as soon as possible, otherwise pieces of the tire could become detached and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, but instead contact your BMW center.◀

CarManuals2.com

TPM Tire Pressure Monitor*

The concept

TPM checks the tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system reports when the tire inflation pressure has dropped considerably in one or several tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise fault-free operation of the system is not ensured.

Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

TPM cannot announce sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences.◀

The system does not function properly if it has not been reset, e.g. a flat tire is reported despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot display a flat tire if a wheel has been mounted without TPM electronics, or if TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Status display on Control Display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

TPM takes the fact that the tire pressure changes during driving into account. A correction is only required if requested by TPM with the color.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Green

The tire pressure matches the learned set state.

"TPM active" appears on the Control Display.

One wheel is yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels are yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire.

Reasons for this can be:

- ▷ TPM is being reset
- ▷ Temporary interference due to systems or devices which use the same radio frequency
- ▷ Malfunction

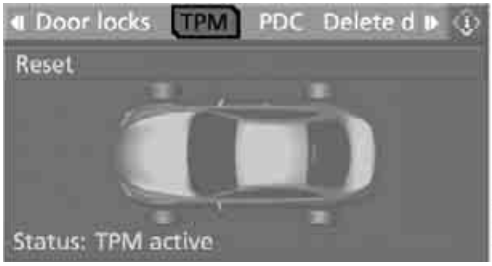
Resetting system

▷ Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

Resetting finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "TPM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.
8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

9. Start to drive.
   The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After a few minutes of driving, the set tire inflation pressures in the tires are applied as the set values to be monitored. Resetting finishes during driving. The tires are shown in green on the Control Display.

▷ If a flat tire is detected during resetting and applying the tire inflation pressures, all tires are shown in yellow on the Control Display. The message "Tire low!" is displayed.◀

Message with low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/ 80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   Stop driving if the vehicle is no longer equipped with run-flat tires, as it was when it came from the factory, refer to page 218. Continued driving after a flat tire can result in serious accidents.◀

2. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guide values:
   - With a light load:
     1 to 2 persons without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - With a medium load:
     2 persons, cargo bay full, or
     4 persons without luggage:
     approx. 95 miles/150 km
   - With a full load:
     4 persons, luggage compartment full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibrations or loud noises occur while the vehicle is being driven, this can indicate final failure of the damaged tire. Reduce speed and stop at a suitable location as soon as possible, otherwise pieces of the tire could become detached and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, but instead contact your BMW center.◀

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. The tires are shown in gray on the Control Display and a message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.

A message like this is displayed in the following situations:

- In case of a malfunction;
  have the system checked.
- If a wheel is mounted without TPM electronics.
- If TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator lights up, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Active steering*

The concept

The active steering is a system that actively varies the steering angle of the front wheels in relation to the steering wheel movements.

When you are driving in the low road speed range, e.g. in a town or when parking, the steering angle increases, i.e. the steering becomes very direct. In the higher speed range, on the other hand, the steering angle is reduced more and more. This improves the handling capability of your BMW over the entire speed range.

In critical situations, the system can make targeted corrections to the steering angle provided by the driver and thus stabilize the vehicle before the driver intervenes. This stability-promoting intervention is deactivated when DSC is switched off, refer to page 89.

CarManuals2.com

Malfunction

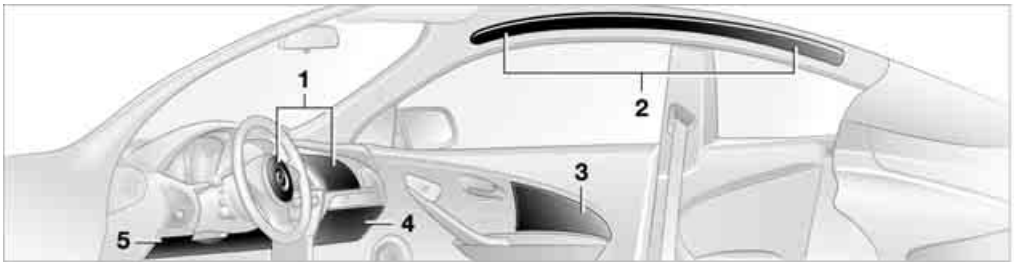
The warning lamp lights up yellow and a message is shown on the Control Display. Active steering is malfunctioning or is temporarily deactivated. At low speed, larger steering wheel movements are required, while the vehicle reacts more sensitively to steering wheel movements in the higher road speed range. The stability-promoting intervention can also be deactivated. Proceed cautiously and drive defensively. Have the system checked if the active steering is malfunctioning.

Brake force display

▷ On the left: normal braking.

▷ On the right: heavy braking.

Airbags



The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Coupe: Head airbags

3 Side airbags

4 Knee airbag

5 Knee airbag

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Protective action

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 49.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head. The knee airbag protects the legs from colliding with the cockpit.

The airbags are deliberately not triggered in every impact situation, e.g. less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way. Do not attempt to remove the airbag restraint system from the vehicle. Do not modify or tamper with either the wiring or the individual components in the airbag system. This category includes the upholstery in the center of the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, the side trim panels on the doors and on the Coupe, the roof pillars along with the sides of the headliner. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel.
Do not touch the individual components directly after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.
In the event of malfunctions, deactivation, or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal, and disposal of airbag generators executed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel and has the required explosives licenses. Otherwise unprofessional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired airbag triggering, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warnings and information on the airbags is also provided on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags

The occupation of the seat is detected by evaluating the impression on the occupied seat surface of the front passenger seat. The system correspondingly activates or deactivates the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side.

The current status of the front passenger airbag, i.e. deactivated or activated, is indicated by the indicator lamp over the interior rearview mirror, refer to Operating state of front passenger airbags in the following.◀

Before transporting a child in the front passenger seat, read the safety information and follow the instructions under Transporting children safely, refer to page 58.
The front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side can be deactivated for teenagers and adults in certain sitting positions; the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up when this occurs. In these cases, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired status cannot be produced by changing the sitting position, transport the corresponding person in the rear seat.
Do not fit seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items onto the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not lay objects under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise a correct evaluation of the occupied seat surface cannot be ensured.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Operating state of front passenger airbags

The illustration here shows a possible arrangement in the Coupe. With some vehicle equipment packages or in the Convertible, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating status of the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side depending on whether the seat is occupied. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

- ▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a child restraint system intended for the purpose is properly detected on the seat. The front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

▷ Most child's seats are detected by the system. Especially the child's seats required by the NHTSA at the time the vehicle is manufactured. After installing a child's seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child's seat has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.◀

- ▷ The indicator lamp does not light up if, for example, the system detects a person of sufficient size seated correctly on the seat. The front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when the seat is empty. But the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are still deactivated.

Operational readiness of airbag system

From radio readiness, refer to page 60, the warning lamp lights up briefly, indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the safety belt tensioners.

Airbag system malfunction

- ▷ Warning lamp does not light up from radio readiness.
- ▷ Warning lamp lights up continuously.

⚠ Have the airbag system checked immediately in case of a malfunction, otherwise there is a danger that the airbag system may not respond in the expected manner in an accident despite an impact of corresponding intensity.◀

CarManuals2.com

Convertible: rollover protection system

The rollover protection system is automatically activated in the event of an accident or a critical driving situation, extreme inclination on the longitudinal axis, or loss of ground contact. The rollover bars located behind the rear head restraints are deployed within fractions of a second.

As a supplement to the rollover bar integrated into the windshield frame, the rollover protection system ensures that all vehicle occupants have the necessary headroom.

⚠ Always keep the path of movement of the rollover protection system clear.
In minor accidents, you are protected by the fastened safety belt and, depending on accident severity, by the safety belt tensioner and multi-phase airbag retention system.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Lowering

If the rollover protection system experienced no impact after automatic activation, then it can be lowered again. No tools are necessary for this purpose.

1. Press the release backward and hold in that position.

2. Press the rollover protection unit halfway down from above.
3. Let go of the release.
4. Press the rollover protection unit down until it snaps into place.

5. Use the same procedure for the second rollover protection unit.

Have the rollover protection system checked after unexpected triggering.

⚠ Never move the convertible top when the rollover protection system is raised.

No changes of any nature may be made to the individual components of the rollover protection system and wiring.

Work on the rollover protection system may only be performed at a BMW center.

Unprofessional attempts to service the system can lead to failure or malfunction.

For a system check and to ensure long-term functioning, you must comply with the maintenance intervals of the service requirements, refer to page 79.◀

Head-Up Display*

CarManuals2.com

The concept

With the Head-Up Display important information is projected into the driver's field of view, e.g. navigation instructions. This enables you to take in this information without looking away from the road.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

1 Navigation instructions
2 Display
   ▷ Cruise control
   ▷ Active cruise control
   ▷ Leaving lane warning
3 Speed

Selecting displays

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
6. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
7. Select desired information of Head-Up Display.

8. Press the controller.
   The information appears in the Head-Up Display.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting brightness

The brightness of the display is adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the base setting.
With the low beams switched on, the brightness can also be adjusted with the knurled wheel of the instrument lighting.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
6. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Brightness" is selected and press the controller.

7. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

CarManuals2.com

The visibility of the displays in the Head-Up Display is influenced by:

▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

- Certain seating positions
- Objects on the cover of the Head-Up Display
- Wet road surface and unfavorable lighting conditions

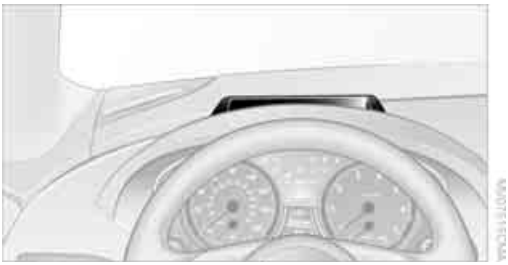
If the image is distorted, please have the base setting checked at a BMW center.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system. The shape of the windshield complies with the requirements of the Head-Up Display to enable a precise display. A film in the windshield prevents double images from being displayed. Windshield replacement should be carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Care instructions

You can find valuable information on this topic under Care, starting on page 227.



Only clean the cover of the Head-Up Display with a soft, nonabrasive cloth or with a display cleaning cloth; otherwise, you may damage it.◀

BMW Night Vision*

The concept

BMW Night Vision is a driver assistance system that is designed to provide enhanced vision for certain objects at night. This can be especially helpful for detecting people and larger animals. When objects are detected, the driver may be able to take appropriate action sooner. For example, the driver may identify and detect the presence of persons or animals in the road ahead or off to the sides and can be more alert, slow down or stop, blow the horn etc. The driver can decide which actions are appropriate and then react accordingly.

A certain area in front of the vehicle is viewed by an infrared camera and a generated image is shown on the Control Display. The resulting thermal image shows the relative heat radiation of the objects present in the camera's field of view. Warmer objects appear brighter and cooler objects appear darker. Contrast is dependent on the temperature difference between the objects and the background and on the amount of heat radiation of the object itself. As a result, it is quite possible that a person is not continually recognizable as a person in shape, since the thermal radiation can be affected by different clothing which blocks heat loss. Objects with little temperature difference to the surrounding area, or little heat radiation are less noticeable, for example in cold weather.

Any improvement in detection depends on many factors such as the object size and temperature compared to the surroundings, or other nearby objects, the visual recognition skills of the driver, weather conditions, and other factors.

Driving hints

With the system active, periodically but briefly, glance at the thermal image on the Control Display to notice objects that could be people or larger animals. The glance should be similar to glancing at the rear view mirror. Do not stare at the image for long periods while driving, as this will remove attention from the road. If you notice an object of interest ahead, be prepared to slow down or stop, blow the horn, or take other appropriate action.

System limits

CarManuals2.com

The system is designed to supplement but not replace forward vision through the windshield. The driver is responsible for safe driving at night. BMW Night Vision is not designed to be

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

used as a continuous viewing window for driving at night.

No system, no matter how sophisticated, can operate without limitations. BMW Night Vision operation is subject to physical and environmental limitations that will reduce the ability of the system to detect and display a clear thermal image. Some of the situations in which these limitations can occur are:

- ▷ on steep hilltops or depressions and in tight curves
- ▷ in tunnels, as the contrast is inherently low
- ▷ when the camera lens is dirty
- ▷ in dense fog, heavy rain or snowfall
- ▷ when displaying very hot objects such as transformers, car exhausts etc.
- ▷ when the image briefly freezes during normal system adjustment.

⚠ BMW Night Vision's potential benefits can be limited by the driving style of the driver, the size and relative temperature of the detected objects, dirt or contamination on the camera lens, adverse weather like snow, rain or fog, and other factors not mentioned here. It will always be the driver's responsibility to drive at a speed and in a manner that recognizes potential hazards and adjust accordingly.
BMW Night Vision is not a substitute or replacement for the driver's responsibility to adapt to visibility and traffic conditions. The forward view illuminated by the headlamps must always be the basis for making safe driving decisions, otherwise a safety risk will result.◀

Activating BMW Night Vision

1. Turn the light switch to position **2** or **3**, refer to page 104.
2. With low beams switched on:
   - ▷ Press the button. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the location of the button may differ somewhat.

   - ▷ Press one of the programmable buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 57.

The image will be displayed on the Control Display after a few seconds. Depending on the last mode selected, either the normal or full screen image will be displayed.

Due to the system's need to adjust periodically, a still image is displayed at certain intervals for fractions of a second. This is normal and not an indication of a problem.

To prevent driving without headlamps, at a speed of more than approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and when dark, the thermal image on the Control Display is only shown when the low beams are on.

Deactivating BMW Night Vision

- ▷ Press the button.
- ▷ Press the button on the steering wheel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

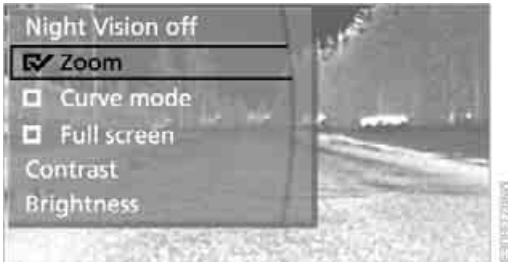
▷ Press the **MENU** button.

▷ Via iDrive, refer to Selecting settings.

Selecting settings

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Activate BMW Night Vision.
2. Press the controller to display the menu items.



3. Select the menu item and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Night Vision off":
     Deactivate BMW Night Vision.
   - ▷ "Zoom":
     At higher speeds, the image is zoomed in.
   - ▷ "Curve mode":
     Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the image section follows the course of the road to some degree.
   - ▷ "Full screen":
     The image is shown on the entire Control Display.
   - ▷ "Contrast":
     The contrast of the screen can be adjusted.
   - ▷ "Brightness":
     The brightness of the screen can be adjusted.

CarManuals2.com

▷ "Curve mode" can only be activated with the "Zoom" function switched on. With "Full screen" activated, "Curve mode" and "Zoom" cannot be selected.◀

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

To exit the menu:
The image automatically disappears after approx. 5 seconds.

Cleaning camera

The function of the camera may be affected by heavy rain and fog, dirt, snow or ice on the lens. When this occurs, the displayed image on the Control Display may become gray.

To minimize icing, the camera lens is automatically heated. However, it may be necessary to clean the camera lens manually under severe weather conditions. When doing so, cautiously remove any debris, ice or snow. To avoid damage to the lens, do not use sharp or abrasive instruments to clean ice, snow, or dirt off the lens.

When the windshield is cleaned with the headlamps on, the camera lens area is automatically sprayed as well. Refer to page 66.

Leaving lane warning*

The concept

This system warns you from a speed of approx. 40 mph/70 km/h when the vehicle is leaving the lane you are currently in on roads with lane limit lines. You feel this due to a slight vibration of the steering wheel.
The system does not warn you if you signal before leaving the lane.
It is best to use the system on well-developed roads and freeways.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Switching on/off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

- ▷ The two lines **1** indicate that the system is activated.
- ▷ The two arrows **2** mean that the system has detected one or two lane limit lines from a speed of approx. 40 mph/70 km/h and warns accordingly.

If you activate the system below a speed of approx. 40 mph/70 km/h, a message will appear stating that the system is not active until this speed is reached.

A warning will be canceled:

- ▷ after approx. 3 seconds
- ▷ if you return to your lane
- ▷ if you brake heavily
- ▷ if you signal

System limits

The leaving lane warning cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining the course of the road.
If the system issues a warning, do not move the steering wheel with unnecessary severity, as otherwise you could loose control of the vehicle.◀

The function of the system may be limited in the following example situations:

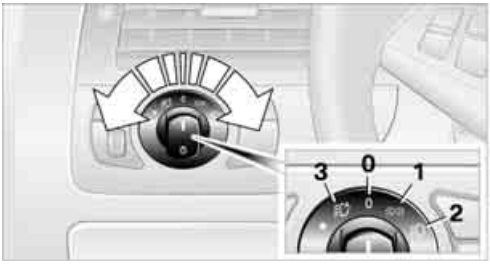
- ▷ in heavy fog, rain or snowfall
- ▷ with worn-away, poorly visible limit lines, or lines that run together or apart or are unclear, e.g. in road construction areas
- ▷ when limit lines are covered by snow, ice, dirt or a great deal of water
- ▷ in tight curves or on narrow roads
- ▷ when limit lines are not white
- ▷ when limit lines are covered by objects
- ▷ when driving up close behind a vehicle driving ahead
- ▷ with bright counter light
- ▷ when the windshield is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, vignettes etc. in the area of the inside rearview mirror

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Lamps

Parking lamps/low beams



0 Lights off and daytime running lamps*

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lamps*

2 Low beams and welcome lamps

3 Automatic headlamp control, daytime running lamps*, welcome lamps, Adaptive Head Light* and high-beam assistant*

If you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is switched off when the light switch is in position **2** or **3**. The daytime running lamps have already been switched off at the same time as the ignition.

For this reason, switch on the side marker lamps as needed, switch position **1**; otherwise, the vehicle is not lit.

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

▷ The parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine. It is preferable to switch on the roadside parking lamps on one side, refer to page 106.◀

Low beams

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

Automatic headlamp control

In switch position **3**, the system activates the low beams and switches them on or off in response to changes in ambient light conditions, for instance, in a tunnel, at dawn and dusk and in case of precipitation. Adaptive Head Light* is active. The LED next to the symbol lights up when the low beams are on.

You can also activate the daytime running lamps, refer to page 105. In the situations described above, the lamps then switch to low beams.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

▷ The low beams remain on independent of the ambient lighting conditions when you switch on the fog lamps.◀

⚠ The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the sensors cannot detect fog of hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low beams manually under these conditions.◀

CarManuals2.com

Welcome lamps

If you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3** when parking the vehicle, then when you unlock the vehicle, the parking lamps and interior lighting remain illuminated for a brief time.

Activating/deactivating welcome lamps

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Welcome light" and press the controller.

   The welcome lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Pathway lighting

When you activate the headlamp flasher after parking the vehicle and switching off the lamps, the low beams will come on for a brief period. You can set the duration or deactivate the function via iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

6. Select "Pathway lighting" and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to select the desired duration.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lamps*

The daytime running lamps light up in position **0**, **1** and **3**. If the light switch remains in position **1**, the parking lamps light up after the ignition is switched off.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lamps*

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Daytime running lamps" and press the controller.

   The daytime running lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Adaptive Head Light*

The concept

Adaptive Head Light is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

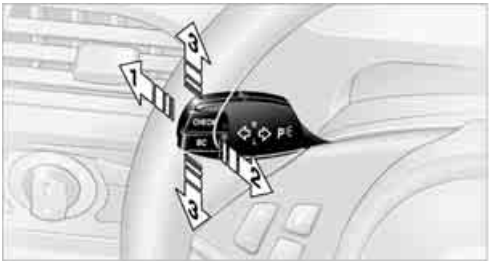
CarManuals2.com

Activating Adaptive Head Light

With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch into position **3**, refer to page 104.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Head Light is not active when driving in reverse and points toward the passenger side when the vehicle is stopped.

High beams/ roadside parking lamps



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Roadside parking lamps

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

You also enjoy the option of lighting up just one side of your vehicle when parking.

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the resistance point, arrow **3**.

▷ The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Briefly press the lever in the opposite direction up to the resistance point, arrow **3**.

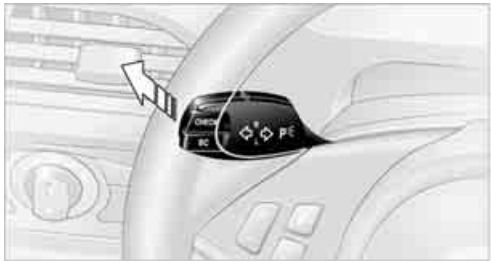
High-beam assistant*

The concept

This system automatically switches the high beams on and off. A sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror controls the process. The assistant makes sure that the high beams are switched on whenever traffic conditions permit. This relieves you of the burden of constantly switching back and forth and simultaneously provides you with the best possible visibility. Naturally, you can intervene at any time to switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating system

1. Turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 104.
2. With the low beams switched on, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the high-beam assistant is activated. The system automatically switches between high beams and low beams, reacting to oncoming traffic, vehicles ahead of you, and sufficiently lit areas, e.g. in built-up zones.

Manually switching between high beams and low beams

If you wish or the situation requires, you can intervene at any time.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

- If the high-beam assistant has switched on the high beams, but you wish to use the low beams, just switch on the low beams with the turn signal lever. This deactivates the high-beam assistant.
  In order to reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.
- If the high-beam assistant has switched on the low beams, but you wish to use the high beams, simply switch on the high beams as usual. This deactivates the system and it is up to you to switch back to low beams.
  In order to reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.
- When the low beams are on, use the headlamp flasher as usual.

System limits

The high-beam assistant is designed to maximize the amount of time that high beams can be safely used and to quickly switch back to low beams when traffic approaches. The system cannot completely replace driver intervention when unusual conditions are encountered. For this reason, switch to low beams when circumstances so dictate. Failure to do so can pose a safety risk.◀

Below are a few examples of situations in which the system may not react or may only function to a limited degree, requiring personal intervention:

- in extremely unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation
- in sensing road users with poor inherent illumination such as pedestrians, cyclists, equestrians, horse-drawn vehicles, railroad or shipping traffic close to the road, and at deer crossings
- in tight curves, on steep crests or dips, with cross-traffic, or with partially hidden oncoming traffic on divided highways
- in poorly illuminated areas and in the presence of highly reflective signs
- in the low speed range
- when the windshield is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, decals etc. in the area of the inside rearview mirror
- when the sensor is dirty. Clean the sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror with a cloth slightly moistened with glass cleaner

Moreover, no system can operate without limitations. High-beam assistant operation is subject to conditions that may reduce the system's ability to recognize the difference between actual vehicle head lamps or tail lamps and, for example, highly reflective signs, markers, and streetlights. To be on the safe side, the system may periodically interpret these situations as conditions that require low beams. Below are some of the situations in which premature switching to low beams can occur:

- approaching large and/or highly reflective signs
- approaching certain lights, such as driveway lighting and porch lights
- approaching certain traffic signals
- approaching large reflective markers

In these situations, the system may interpret the above conditions as a vehicle ahead requiring a switch to low beams. When the conditions return to normal, the system will reactivate the high beams.

The high-beam assistant cannot replace the driver's responsibility for complying with state laws on high-beam switching or for adapting to visibility and traffic conditions.

Switching off via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "High-beam assistant" and press the controller.

   ◘ High-beam assistant is switched off.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Fog lamps

First switch on the parking lamps or the low beams. The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up whenever the fog lamps are on.

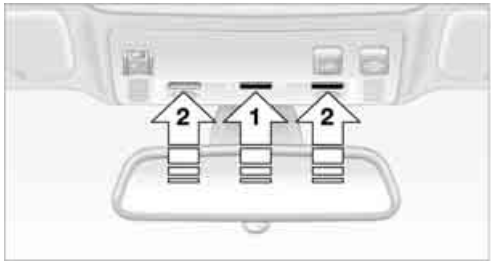
The fog lamps are switched off whenever the high beams are switched on.

▷ If the automatic headlamp control is activated, the low beams will come on when you switch on the fog lamps.◀

Instrument lighting

You can control the lighting intensity by using the knurled wheel.

Interior lamps



Control of the interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting, courtesy lamps* and sill panel lighting* is automatic.

With the courtesy lamps, LED lights are provided in the outside rearview mirrors to illuminate the exterior area around the doors.

▷ To protect the battery, all lamps in the vehicle are switched off approx. 15 minutes after radio readiness is switched off, refer to Start/Stop button on page 60.◀

Switching interior lamps on and off manually

Press button **1**.

If the interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting, courtesy lamps and sill panel lighting are to remain switched off continually, press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Reading lamps

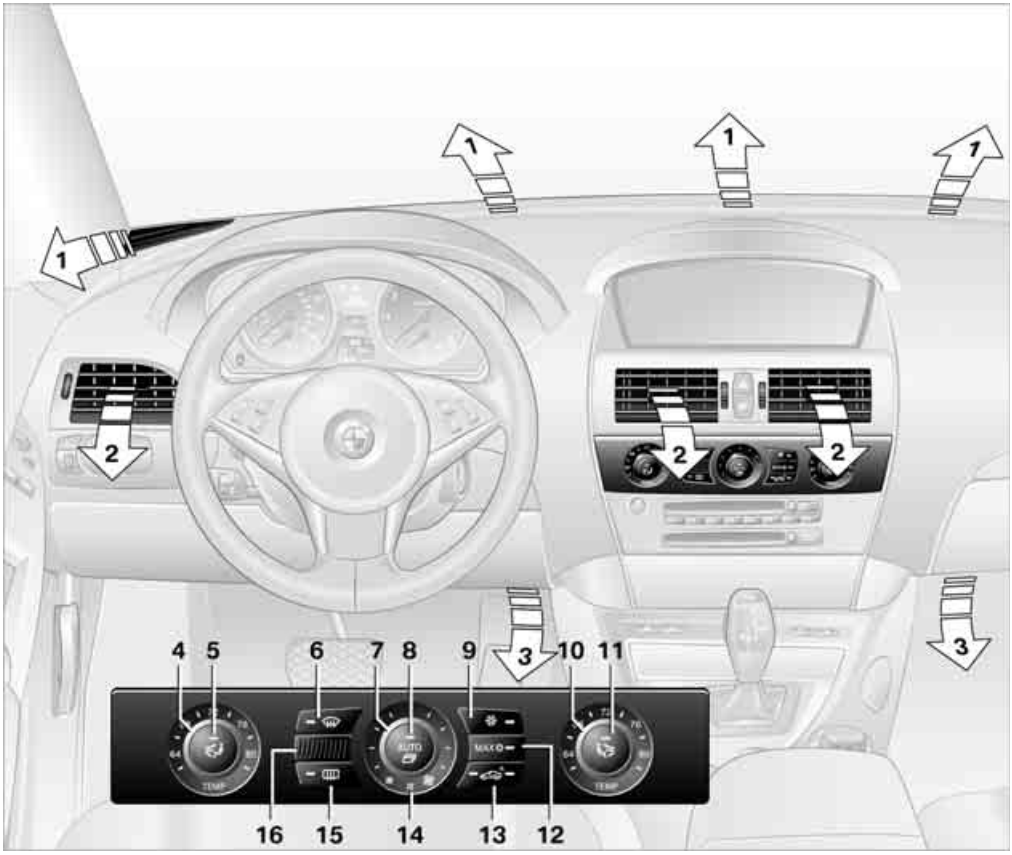
The reading lamps are beside the interior lamp: You can turn them on and off using buttons **2** located next to the lamps.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Climate

Automatic climate control



1 Air directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body area, refer to Ventilation on page 114

3 Air to footwell

4 Temperature, left side of passenger compartment

5 Manual air distribution, driver's side

6 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

7 Manual air volume, switching off automatic climate control, residual heat utilization

8 AUTO program

9 Switching cooling function on and off manually

10 Temperature, right side of passenger compartment

11 Manual air distribution, front passenger side

12 Maximum cooling

13 AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

14 LED for residual heat utilization and parked-car ventilation system

15 Rear window defroster

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

16 Air grill for interior temperature sensor – please keep clear and unobstructed

The current setting for air distribution is displayed on the Control Display.

A congenial climate

The AUTO program offers the optimum air distribution and air volume for virtually all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. Now you only need to select an interior temperature pleasant to you.

The following sections contain more detailed information on the available setting options.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, also refer to Personal Profile settings on page 31.

AUTO program

The AUTO program handles the adjustment of air volume and air distribution to the windshield and side windows, in the direction of the upper body and in the footwell. It also adapts your instructions for the temperature to outside influences throughout the year.

The cooling function is switched on along with the AUTO program. At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program in such a way that window condensation is prevented as much as possible.

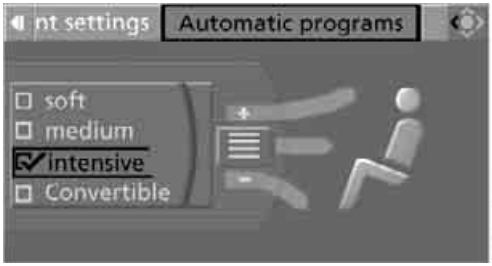
Intensity of AUTO program

You can adjust the intensity of the AUTO program by repeatedly pressing the AUTO button. The respective current setting is briefly displayed on the Control Display when the button is pressed.

You can also adjust the intensity of the AUTO program via iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Automatic programs" and press the controller.



4. Select the desired intensity and press the controller.

   ☑ The marked intensity of the automatic program is switched on.

Convertible program*

When the convertible top is opened, the convertible program can also be selected. In the convertible program, the automatic climate control is optimized for driving with the convertible top open. In addition, the air volume is increased as the speed increases.

If the convertible program has been selected, it is automatically active every time the top is opened.

▷ The effect of the convertible program can be greatly enhanced if the wind deflector is installed.◀

Temperature

Set the desired temperature individually on the driver's and front passenger side.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible at any time of year, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

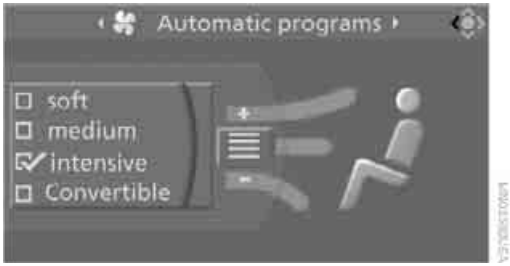
▷ When changing between different temperature settings in rapid succession, the automatic climate control does not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.◀

CarManuals2.com

In the highest setting you activate the maximum heating output, regardless of the outside temperature.

Adjusting temperature in upper body region

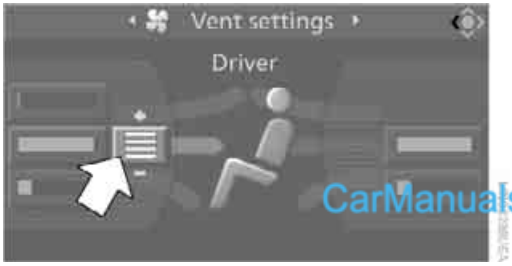
1. Press the button to display the current setting on the Control Display.
2. Select the field by moving the controller and turning the controller to adjust the temperature.



You can also adjust the temperature in the upper body region with iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.
4. Select the field by moving the controller and turning the controller to adjust the temperature.



CarManuals2.com

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Quickly remove ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.

To do this, also switch on the cooling function.

Rear window defroster

The rear window defroster switches off after a while.

Convertible: the rear window defroster is only activated when the rear window is closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, upper wires are used as an antenna and are not part of the rear window defroster.

Air volume, manual

You can adjust the air volume by turning. You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air volume with the AUTO button.

The air quantity is reduced and if need be, the ventilation is switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The display stays the same.

Air distribution, manual

You can route the air flowing out into the vehicle interior via various programs, separately for the driver's and passenger's side:

- ▷ Upper body region
- ▷ Upper body region and footwell
- ▷ Footwell
- ▷ Driver's side: windows and footwell
- ▷ Individual program

Selecting program

Press the button repeatedly until the desired air distribution of the respective program is shown on the Control Display.

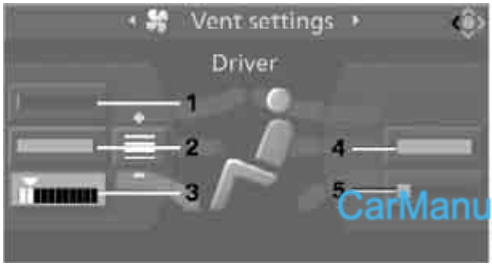
Adjusting air distribution individually – individual program

Your settings are stored in this program.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.
   The driver's and front passenger side can be adjusted separately with the fields on the right or left side.
4. Select the driver's or front passenger side if necessary.
   Move the controller to the right or left repeatedly until the driver's or front passenger side is selected.
5. Select the desired field by moving the controller.
6. Turn the controller to adjust the air distribution.



Driver's side:

1 Air directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body

3 Air to footwell

Front passenger side:

4 Air for the upper body

5 Air to footwell

Pressing the AUTO button cancels the manual air distribution settings.◀

The automatic mode for the air volume remains effective with manual air distribution.

Switching cooling function on and off

The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before also reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting.

This function is only available when the engine is running.

The cooling function helps to avoid condensation on the window surfaces or to quickly remove them.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is also switched on with the AUTO program.

Maximum cooling

Maximally cooled air is obtained as quickly as possible at an outside temperature above approx. 32 °F / 0 °C and with the engine running.

At the lowest temperature, the automatic climate control switches into recirculating air mode. The maximum air volume flows out of the vents for the upper body. Therefore, open these vents for maximum cooling.

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode

You can respond to pollutants or unpleasant odors in the immediate environment by suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle. During AUC operation, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

By pressing the button repeatedly, you can request three operating modes:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Right LED on, AUC mode: the system detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off the supply as needed.
- ▷ Left LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off.

Should the windows fog up in the recirculated-air mode, press the AUTO button or switch off the recirculated-air mode and increase the air volume if necessary.
The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time, as the air qual-

CarManuals2.com

ity inside the vehicle deteriorates continuously.◀

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the passenger compartment, e.g. while stopped at a school to pick up a child.

1. Switch off the engine.
2. Turn to the right, refer to arrow.

The function can be switched on when the following conditions are met:

- ▷ up to 15 minutes after switching off the engine
- ▷ with engine at operating temperature
- ▷ with sufficient battery voltage
- ▷ at an outside temperature below 77 °F / 25 °C

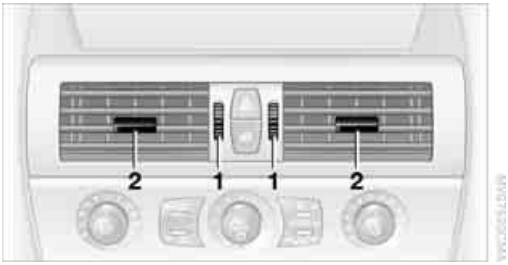
From radio readiness the interior temperature, the air volume and the air distribution can be set.

Switching automatic climate control on and off

1. Turn to the left to minimum air volume.
2. After approx. 1 second, turn to the left again.

You switch on the system again by pressing any button of the automatic climate control.

Ventilation



1 Knurled wheels to smoothly open and close vent outlets

2 Levers to change the vent outlet direction

⚠ Do not drop any foreign objects into the vent outlets; otherwise, they could be catapulted outwards and cause injuries.◀

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance, if the interior has become too warm, etc.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and is not directed straight at you.

CarManuals2.com

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter as a standard part of your scheduled maintenance.
You can have more detailed information shown on the Control Display, refer to page 79.

Parked car ventilation

The concept

The parked car ventilation blows air into the passenger compartment to lower interior temperatures.

It is ready to use in the parked car mode at any outside temperature.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

You can set two different times for the system to start. The parked car ventilation can also be switched on and off directly. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Since the system uses a substantial amount of electrical current, you should refrain from activating it twice in succession without allowing the battery to be recharged in normal operation between use.

The air emerges through the upper body region vent outlets in the instrument panel. Therefore, please open the vent outlets.

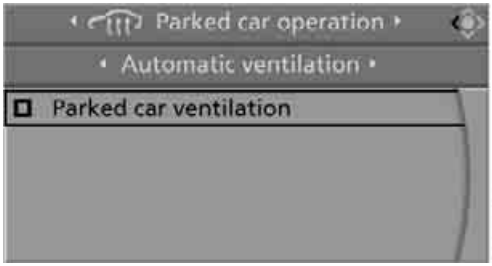
The parked car ventilation is operated via iDrive.

Switching on and off directly

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Automatic ventilation" and press the controller.
5. Select "Parked car ventilation" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



The parked car ventilation is switched on.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes.

Preselecting activation times

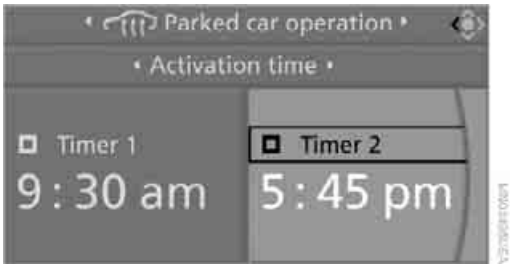
1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Activation time" and press the controller.
5. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2".

6. Select the time and press the controller. The first setting of the time display is selected.

7. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is selected.
9. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the time is stored.

Activating activation time

Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2" and then press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

The switch-on time is activated.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control lights up.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes when the parked car ventilation has switched on.

CarManuals2.com

The parked car ventilation is only available for activation within the next 24 hours. Please reactivated it after this time.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Practical interior accessories

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled accessories, such as garage and gate or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. After this, the programmed memory button **1** will operate the system in question. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

Should you sell your vehicle one day, be sure to delete the stored programs beforehand for your safety, refer to page 118.

To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the travel range of the device. Also, comply with the safety precautions of the original hand-held transmitter.◀

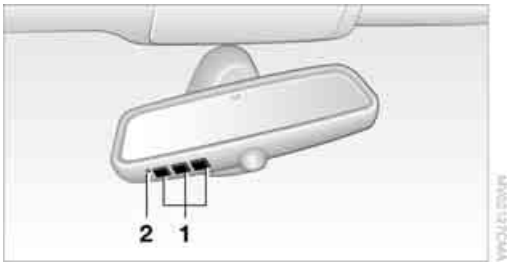
CarManuals2.com

Checking compatibility

If you see this symbol on the packaging or in the manual supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, it is safe to assume that it is compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

If you have additional questions, please contact your BMW center or call: 1-800-355-3515.
Information is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmwusa.com or www.homelink.com.
HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.◀

Programming



1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on ignition, refer to page 60.
2. When starting operation for the first time: Press the left and right-hand memory button **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes quickly. All stored programs are deleted.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 in/10 cm to 12 in/ 30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit button on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

You can operate the device when the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

If the device fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly for a short time and then remains lit for approx. 2 seconds, this indicates that the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. In the case of an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described at Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the equipment to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization.
When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

If you have any additional questions, please contact your BMW center.◀

Deleting all stored programs

Press the left and right-hand memory button **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes. All stored programs are deleted.

Individual programs cannot be deleted.

Rememorizing individual programs

1. Hold the original handheld remote control approx. 4 in/10 cm to 12 in/30 cm away from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
2. Press the desired memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote.
3. If the LED **2** flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the command button of the original hand-held transmitter. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.

Glove compartment

Opening

Press the button. The glove compartment opens automatically and the lamps come on.

CarManuals2.com

To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven,

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Closing

Fold up the lid.

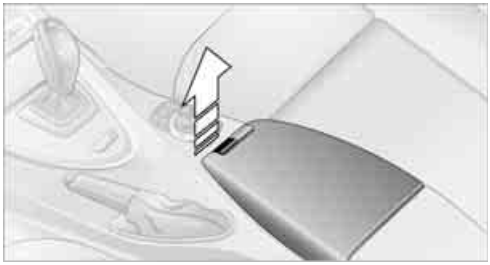
USB interface for data transmission

Port for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g. music collections.

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB-audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB-audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard disks.
- ▷ Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Center armrest



A storage compartment is located in the armrest between the front seats. This compartment is integrated into the central locking system and can also be locked separately using the hotel function, refer to page 35.

CarManuals2.com

To open the cover:
Pull the left button. The cover opens and can be folded upward.

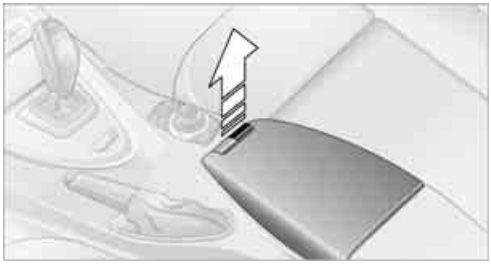
Depending on the version, the storage compartment can be equipped with a corresponding cradle* for the telephone or mobile phone.

Connection for external audio device

A connection for an external audio device is located in the storage compartment. You can, for example, connect a CD player or an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle speakers, refer to page 180.

Adjusting height

The center armrest can be set in two positions.



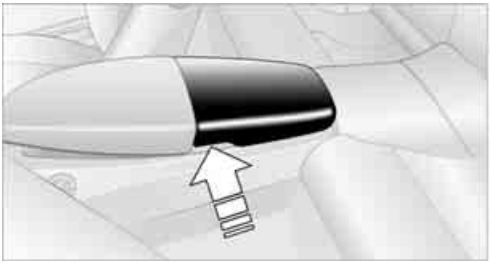
Pull the right button:
Move the armrest upward or downward and lock it in the desired position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Storage compartments

Storage compartments in the passenger compartment

Storage compartment behind center armrest



To open, raise the cover at the left or right edge. The compartment contains the cup holder and the lock for the hotel function, refer to page 35.

Other compartments and nets

Other compartments are provided in the doors as well as in the front center console*.
Ticket pockets are located in the sun visors.
Storage nets are located on the backrests of the front seats and in the passenger footwell*.

CarManuals2.com

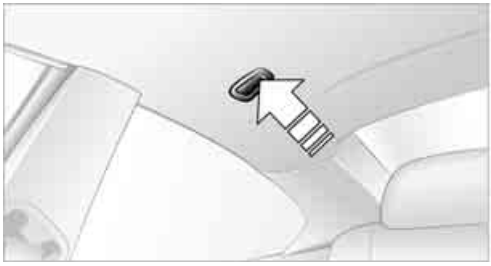
To prevent the risk of injury during an accident, do not stow hard or sharp-edged items in the nets.◀

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment

You have the following storage options in the luggage compartment:

- ▷ Storage compartment in the right side trim panel, which is also suitable, if you so desire, for accommodating the vehicle literature.
- ▷ Net at the loading lip for smaller items.

Coupe: Clothes hooks



To fold down, press at the top edge.

When hanging clothing on the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision. Do not hang heavy objects on the hooks. If you do so, they could cause personal injury to occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Cup holders

Use lightweight, unbreakable containers and do not transport hot beverages. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. Do not force containers that are too large into the cup holders, otherwise damage could result.◀

The compartment of the rear center console contains a built-in cup holder and a removable one.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

The removable cup holder can be inserted into the side of the center console.

Ashtray

Opening

Press the trim strip of the cover.

Emptying

Press the opened cover beyond the resistance point, refer to arrow: the ashtray lifts up for removal.

Cigarette lighter

Press in the lighter with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, use the lighter and burn themselves.◀

CarManuals2.com

Connecting electrical devices

Socket

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the cigarette lighter socket can be used as a power outlet for hand flashlights, car vacuum cleaners, etc., with power ratings of up to approx. 200 W at 12 V. Avoid damaging the socket due to inserting plugs of different shapes or sizes.

In front passenger footwell

Access to the socket:
Fold open the cover.

Ski bag*

The ski bag permits safe and clean transport of up to two pairs of standard skis or one snow-board.

You can use the ski bag to stow skis up to 6.9 ft/ 2.10 m long.

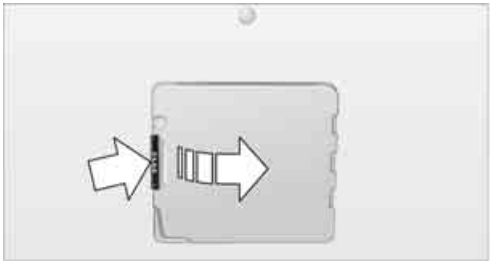
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Loading

1. Press the button downward and pull the filler element forward.

CarManuals2.com

2. Extend the ski bag between the front seats. The zipper facilitates access to the stowed items and drying of the ski bag.
3. Press the button in the luggage compartment.

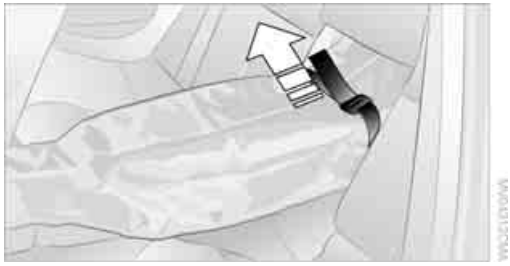


4. Open the loading flap and use the magnetic holder to secure it to the rear panel.

To stow the ski bag, perform the above steps in reverse order.

Only stow clean skis in the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing cargo



After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

Secure the ski bag in this way. If you fail to do so, it could endanger vehicle occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.

To refit the filler element, insert the two tabs at the bottom into the strip and press the filler element back into place. Make sure that you do not damage the rear seat upholstery.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Driving tips

This section provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

Things to remember when driving

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. To ensure that your vehicle continues to provide optimized economy of operation throughout an extended service life, we request that you devote careful attention to the following section.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at changing engine and driving speeds, however do not exceed 4,500 rpm or 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kick-down mode during these initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

CarManuals2.com

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive reservedly during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive in a reserved manner during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch is only at its optimized level after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in instructions again if components mentioned above must be replaced after subsequent driving operation.

Saving fuel

The fuel consumption of your vehicle depends on various factors. Through a few simple steps, your driving style, and regular maintenance, you can have a positive influence on your fuel consumption and environmental impact.

Removing unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Removing add-on parts after use

Remove unneeded auxiliary mirrors, roof or rear luggage racks after use. Add-on parts attached to the vehicle impede the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Closing windows and glass sunroof

An open glass sunroof or open windows likewise increase the drag coefficient and therefore the fuel consumption.

Checking tire inflation pressures regularly

Check and correct the tire inflation pressure as needed at least twice a month and before long trips.

An insufficient tire inflation pressure increases the rolling resistance and thus increases the fuel consumption and tire wear.

Driving off immediately

Do not allow the engine to warm up by leaving it running while the vehicle remains stationary. Instead, begin to drive at a moderate engine speed. This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Thinking ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. To do so, maintain the appropriate distance from the vehicle in front of you. An anticipatory and smooth driving style reduces fuel consumption.

Avoiding high engine speeds

Use 1st gear only for starting off. Accelerate rapidly in 2nd gear and above. Avoid high engine speeds in doing so and shift into the next gear early.

When you have reached the desired speed, shift into the highest possible gear and drive with the lowest possible engine speed while maintaining a constant a vehicle speed.

In general: driving at a low engine speed reduces fuel consumption and minimizes wear.

Taking advantage of coasting

When approaching a red light, let off the gas and allow the vehicle to coast to a stop in the highest possible gear.

On steep roadways, let off the gas and allow the vehicle to roll in the appropriate gear.

The flow of fuel is interrupted when coasting.

Switching off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine at longer stops such as traffic signals, railroad crossings, or in traffic jams. Even having the engine switched off for approx. 4 seconds results in fuel savings.

Switching off functions currently not required

Functions such as the cooling function of the automatic climate control, seat heating or rear window defroster draw large amounts of power and consume additional fuel. Their influence is particularly pronounced in city traffic and stop & go operation. For this reason, it is a good idea to switch these functions off when they are not really needed.

Having maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle serviced regularly in order to achieve the optimum economy and service life of your vehicle. BMW recommends having the maintenance performed by a BMW center. Also please pay attention to the BMW maintenance system, refer to page 225.

General driving notes

Closing luggage compartment lid

Only drive with the luggage compartment lid completely closed, otherwise exhaust can penetrate into the passenger compartment.◀

If it is absolutely necessary to drive with the luggage compartment lid open:

1. Coupe: close both windows and the glass sunroof.
   Convertible: with closed top, close all windows.
2. Increase the air volume of the automatic climate control to a high level, refer to page 112.

CarManuals2.com

Hot exhaust system

As in all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated on the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to it, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious property damage as well as personal injury. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise there is a risk of burns.◀

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning, and is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the tread depth of the tires decreases, refer also to Minimum tire tread on page 217.

Driving through water

Do not drive through water on the road if it is deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Using handbrake on inclines

On inclines, do not hold the vehicle in place for a long time by riding the clutch; use the handbrake. Otherwise greater clutch wear will result.◀

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. In situations that require it, it is best to brake with full force. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal, combined with sounds from the hydraulic circuits, indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light but consistent pedal pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

CarManuals2.com

Hills

To prevent overheating and thus reduced efficiency of the brake system, downshift to a gear in which only minimal brake applications are needed when descending long or steep downhill stretches. Even light but consistent pressure on the brake can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

The braking effect of the engine can be further increased by downshifting, if necessary all the way down into first gear. This strategy helps you avoid placing excessive loads on the brake system. For information on downshifting in the manual mode of the sport automatic transmission, refer to page 63.

Do not drive with the clutch depressed, in idle or with the engine switched off, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering. Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area of movement of the pedals and impair their operation.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

When vehicle is parked

Condensation forms in the air conditioner system during operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Before driving into a car wash

To prevent the exterior mirrors on this vehicle from being damaged, always fold them in by hand before entering an automatic car wash.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

You can find valuable information on this topic under Care, starting on page 227.

Sport automatic transmission

Insert the remote control into the ignition lock. The engine can be switched off with the transmission in neutral. Also refer to page 40.

Cargo loading

To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. The ultimate result can assume the form of a sudden blow-out.◀

Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo bay; otherwise the vehicle could be damaged.◀

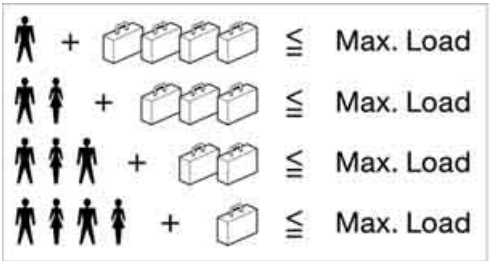
Determining loading limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

   The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs. or YYY kg, as otherwise the vehicle may be damaged and unstable driving conditions may result.◀

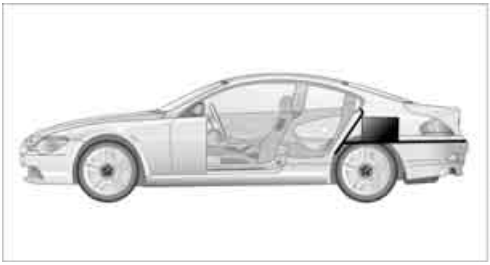
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX lbs. or YYY kg.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the XXX amount equals 800 lbs. and there will be four 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 200 lbs.:
   800 lbs. minus 600 lbs. = 200 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The permissible load is the total of the weight of occupants and cargo/luggage. The greater the weight of occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

Stowing cargo



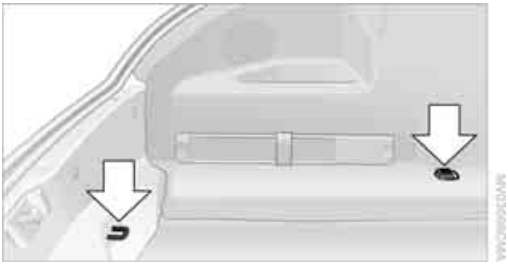
▷ Place heavy cargo as far forward and as low as possible, placing it directly behind the bulkhead behind the rear seats.

▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Securing cargo



- Use the luggage net* or securing straps to hold down small and lightweight luggage and cargo.
- Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your BMW center. Four lashing eyes mounted in the cargo bay are used to secure these heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration.
- Please observe the special instructions supplied with the heavy-duty cargo straps.

Position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the vehicle's occupants, for example if sudden braking or evasive maneuvers are necessary.

CarManuals2.com

Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 245, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.

You should never transport unsecured heavy or hard objects in the passenger compartment, as they could fly around and pose a safety hazard to the vehicle's occupants during abrupt braking or evasive maneuvers.

Use only the lashing eyes pictured to fasten the heavy-duty cargo straps. Do not secure cargo with the upper attachment points for LATCH, refer to page 59; otherwise, you could damage them.◀

Pad on base of luggage compartment

You can use the pad as needed, for example to transport soiled objects. The rubberized side is washable and has an anti-skid effect.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and specify your route so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

CarManuals2.com

Starting navigation system*

Your navigation system can use satellites to ascertain the precise position of your vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

Navigation DVD

The navigation system requires a special navigation DVD. The latest version is available at your BMW center.

Inserting navigation DVD

1. Insert the navigation DVD with the labeled side up. The navigation DVD is retracted.
2. Allow several seconds for the system to scan the data from the DVD.

Removing navigation DVD

1. Press button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

If the DVD is not ejected from the drive, it is possible that it is blocked. In this case a message is also shown on the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

Display in assistance window

You can display the route or the current position in the assistance window. This display remains visible even if you change to another application.

1. Move the controller to the right to enter the assistance window.

2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select the desired route view or "Current position".

4. Press the controller.

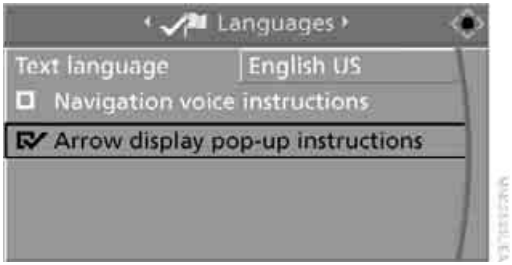
Displaying arrow view in map view*

If the navigation system suggests a change of direction, the arrow view is briefly displayed.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller until "Language / Units" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Arrow display pop-up instructions" and press the controller.



The arrow view appears in the assistance window.

CarManuals2.com

Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from among the following options:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Entering destination via voice*, refer to page 139
- ▷ Selecting destination using information, refer to page 142
- ▷ Selecting destination from a list, refer to Destination list, page 143
- ▷ Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 144
- ▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 146

After selecting your destination you can proceed to start the destination guidance, refer to page 148.

You can also store a navigation destination on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 22.

⚠ Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".
3. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

The Control Display shows:

- ▷ the arrow view or map view during destination guidance
- ▷ the destination list when destination guidance is switched off

CarManuals2.com

Entering a destination manually

The system's word matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns, refer to page 147. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry so that stored names can be called up quickly.

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.

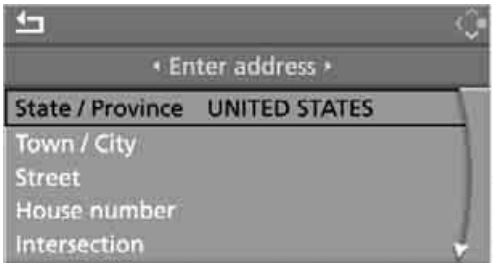
The system also supports you with the following features:

- ▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town/city.
- ▷ You can skip the entry of country and locality if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Selecting country

1. Select "State / Province" or the displayed country and press the controller.



   The list of available countries appears on the display.

2. Select the country of destination and press the controller.

In order to be able to start the destination guidance, at least the town/city of the destination or its zip code must be entered.

Entering destination via town/city name

1. Select "Town / City" or the displayed town/city and press the controller.
2. Select the starting letter and press controller.
   A list of all towns/cities starting with this letter appears on the Control Display.
3. To delete the letter entered if necessary:

   ▷ Delete individual numbers or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵, and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

   ▷ Delete all numbers or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press and hold the controller.

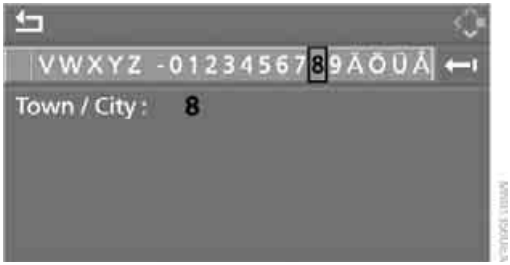
4. If necessary, enter more letters.
   The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.
   ▷ Enter blank space if necessary:
   Select the _ symbol and press the controller.

5. Change to the third field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the town/city name is selected from the list and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Entering destination by zip code

1. Select "Town / City" and press the controller.
2. Enter the zip code:
   Select the desired digits and press the controller.



   ▷ Enter a blank space:
   Select the _ symbol and press the controller.
   ▷ Delete individual numbers or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press the controller.
   ▷ Delete all numbers or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press and hold the controller.
3. Select the zip code and press the controller.
   The corresponding destination is displayed.
4. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering street, house number and intersection

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the street displayed and press the controller.
2. Enter the street.
   The street is entered exactly like the destination.

The intersection is entered in the same way as the street.

Entering a street without entering destination

You can also enter a street without entering a destination. In this case all streets of the entered country are offered for selection. The related town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, you can undo this entry. This may be practical if the desired street does not exist in the entered destination, because, for example, it belongs to another part of the town/city.

1. Change to upper field.
   ⮌ The arrow is selected.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

2. Turn the controller to the right until the request for the entry of a street in the country appears and press the controller.

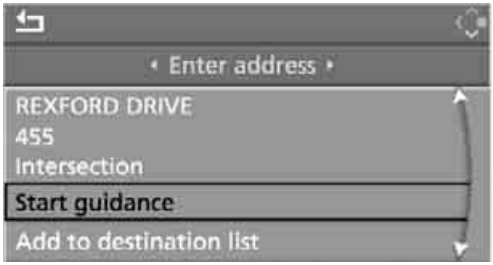
3. Change to the second field from the top and enter the street.

Entering house number

All house numbers stored for the street on the navigation DVD can be entered.

1. Select "House number" and press the controller.
2. Enter the house number:
   Select the desired digits and press the controller.
3. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until the house number is selected and press the controller.

Starting destination guidance with manual destination entry



▷ Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.
Destination guidance starts immediately.

▷ If the destination guidance does not need to be started immediately:
Select "Add to destination list" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

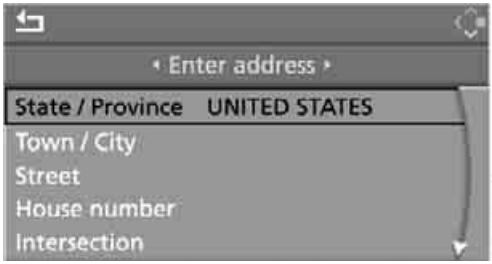
The destination is stored in the destination list, refer to page 143.

Entering destination via voice*

You can enter a desired destination via the voice command system. When entering the destination, it is possible to change between voice command and iDrive at any time. Reactivate the voice command function for this purpose if necessary.

With ›Options‹ you can have the possible commands read aloud.◀

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹



Selecting country

1. Wait for the system to ask for the country of destination.
2. Say the name of the country of destination.

Say the name of the country of destination in the language of the voice command system.

Entering destination

The destination can be spelled or entered as an entire word.

Spelling destination

To enter the destination, spell it using the orthography of the country of destination. Pronounce the letters smoothly and at normal

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Spell town/city name:
   Say at least the first three letters of the destination. The more letters you say, the more exactly the system recognizes the town/city.

Carmanuals2.com

The system can suggest up to 20 destinations that match your entries. Up to 6 entries are displayed at once on the Control Display.

A destination is suggested by the system.

2. Select town/city:
   - ▷ Select highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ To show other entries in the list: ›Next page‹
   - ▷ To respell the town/city: ›Repeat‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering the destination as an entire word*

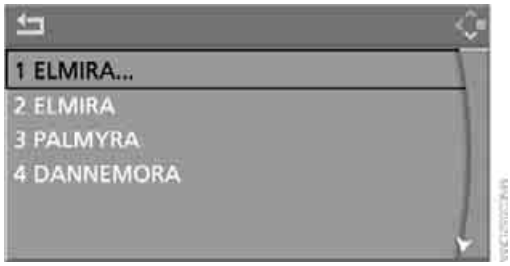
Towns/cities and streets located in the region where the language of the voice command system is spoken can be entered as an entire word.

Example: to enter a US destination as an entire word, the system language must be English.

Speak smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Wait for the system to request the destination.
2. Say the name of the destination.

   The system can suggest up to 6 destinations that match your entries.



A destination is suggested by the system.

3. Select town/city:
   - ▷ Select highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ To reenter the town/city: ›Repeat‹
   - ▷ To enter the town/city by spelling: ›Spell‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

▷ Destinations that sound the same which cannot be differentiated by the system are summarized in a separate list and shown as a destination followed by three dots.
Select this entry with ›Yes‹ if necessary. Then select the desired town/city from this list.◀

Entering street and house number

The street is entered in the same way as the destination.

To enter the house number:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.

Up to 4-digit house numbers can be entered. Say the house number as individual numbers.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Saving destination

The destination is added to the destination list or can be stored in the address book.

CarManuals2.com

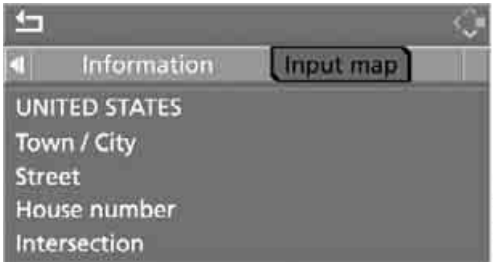
›Add to destination list‹ or
›Add to address book‹

Map-guided destination selection

If you only know the location of the town/city or street of the destination, then you can enter the destination by using a map. You can use the cursor to select the destination on the map and then adopt it into the destination guidance.

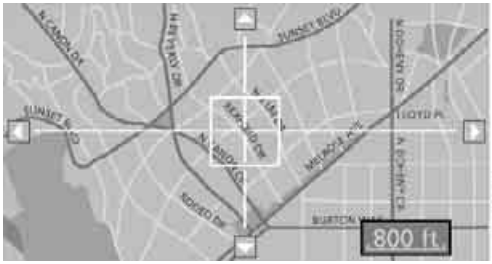
1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

3. Select "Input map" and press the controller.



A section of a map is displayed on the Control Display:

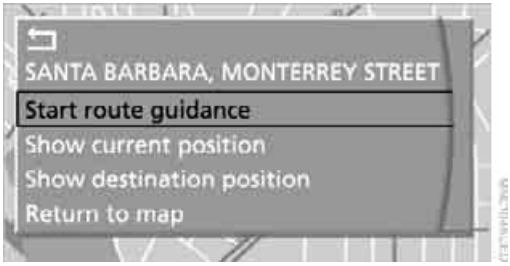
- ▷ During destination guidance, around the current destination
- ▷ With the destination guidance deactivated, around the last destination entered



4. Select destination with cursor.
   - ▷ Changing scale: turn the controller.
   - ▷ Moving map: move the controller in the required direction.
     The controller can be moved to the left, right, forwards and backwards.
5. To adopt or store the destination in the destination guidance system, press the controller.
   The selected destination and other menu items are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

6. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ "Start route guidance" starts destination guidance.
   - ▷ "Show current position" places your current position at the center of the map.
   - ▷ "Show destination position" places the current destination at the center of the map.
   - ▷ "Return to map" changes back to the "Input map".
   - ▷ Exit the menu.



7. Press the controller.

The map for the destination entry can also be displayed in the map display:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

Selecting destination using information

You can obtain a display of selected destinations, e.g. hotels, sights or hospitals, and adopt them into the destination guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Select "Information" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

3. Select location:
   - ▷ "On destination"
   - ▷ "On location"
   - ▷ "On a new destination"

4. Press the controller.
5. Make your selection, e.g. "Hotels and restaurants", and press the controller.
6. Enter search criteria if necessary, e.g. the maximum distance from the current location.
7. Select "<Start search>" and press the controller.
   These destinations are displayed on the Control Display.

8. Select a destination and press the controller.

   ▷ The scope of the information and symbols is dependent on the respective navigation DVD.◀
9. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To adopt the address in the destination list and start the destination guidance:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Select the ➡● symbol and press the controller.

- ▷ To establish a telephone connection:
  Select the symbol and press the controller.
- ▷ To display additional destinations:
  Select the ▶ ◀ symbol and press the controller.
- ▷ To start a new search:
  Select the symbol and press the controller.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Symbols in map view

If, for example, you have selected the category Hotels, the hotels are shown on the map as symbols.

To hide the symbols in the map view:

1. Select the symbol i and press the controller.

2. Select "Hide map icons" and press the controller.

The symbols are hidden.

To display the symbols:
Select "Show map icons" and press the controller.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Destination list

The last 20 entered destinations are shown in the destination list. You can display these destinations and adopt them in the destination guidance system.
For example, to plan a longer route, you can store all destinations you want to drive to in advance in the destination list, refer to Entering a destination manually on page 136.

Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

The last destination entered is the first item in the destination list.

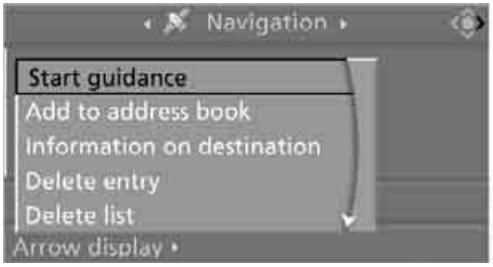
➡● This symbol indicates the current destination during destination guide.

To display additional destinations from the destination list:
turn the controller.

Applying destination in destination guidance system

CarManuals2.com

1. Select the desired destination and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



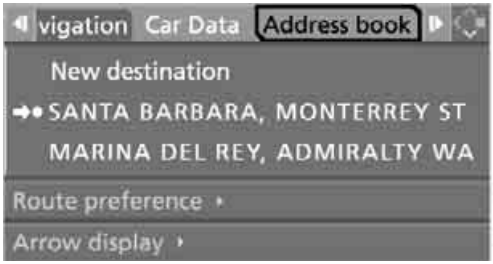
Editing destination list

1. Select the desired destination in the destination list and press the controller.
2. The selected destination can be edited:
   - ▷ Store entry:
     Select "Add to address book".
   - ▷ Display information on destination:
     Select "Information on destination".
   - ▷ Delete entry:
     Select "Delete entry".
   - ▷ Delete all entries:
     Select "Delete list". The destination guidance is switched off.
   - ▷ Change entry:
     Select "Edit". For operation, refer to Entering destination via town/city name, page 137.
3. Press the controller.

Address book

Opening address book

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

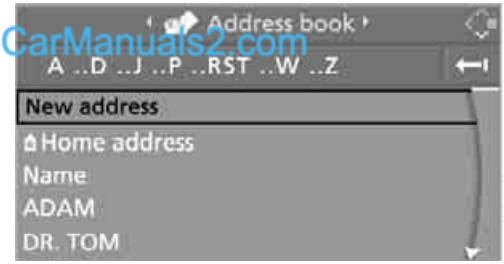


Select "Address book" and press the controller.

Storing destinations in address book

You can store approx. 100 destinations in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select "New address" and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

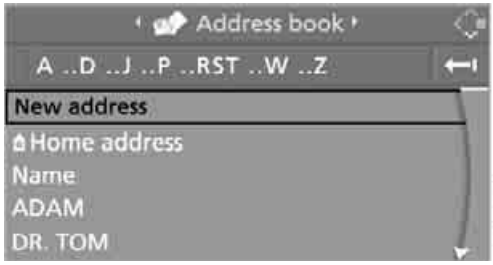
3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.
4. Enter name and address, also refer to Entering a destination manually, page 136.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.
   The entry is stored in the address book.

You can also store a destination from the destination list in the address book, refer to page 143.

Storing current position*

The current position can be adopted into the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until "New address" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select "Use current location as address" and press the controller.
   The name given can be changed. For oper-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

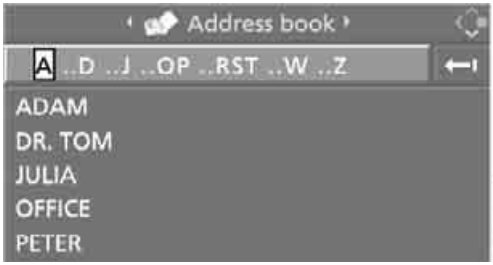
ation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 136.

4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

You can also enter your current position into the address book if you have left the sector covered by the navigation DVD. In this case, you must enter a name.

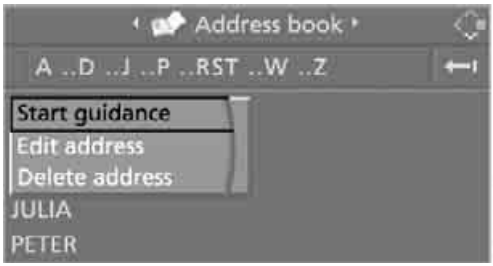
Selecting destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
   The stored entries appear on the Control Display.



2. Select the entry and press the controller.

To start the destination guidance:
Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



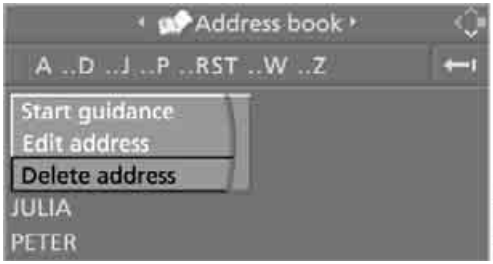
Changing destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Edit address" and press the controller.

4. Change entry.
   For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 136.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Deleting individual destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Delete address" and press the controller.



4. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Deleting all destinations from address book

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Delete data" is selected and press the controller.

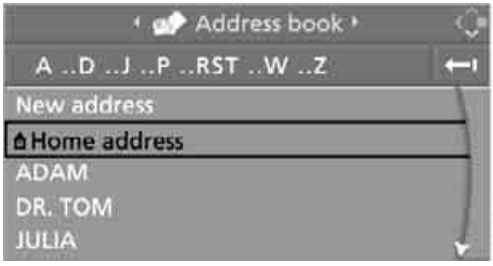
6. Select "Delete address book" and press the controller.
7. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Storing home address

You can store your current position or the current destination as the home address in the address book. This entry occupies the second position in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Home address" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



3. Select "Use current location as address", or "Save current destination" during the destination guidance, and press the controller.
4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Adopting home address as destination

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing home address

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Edit address" and press the controller. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 136.

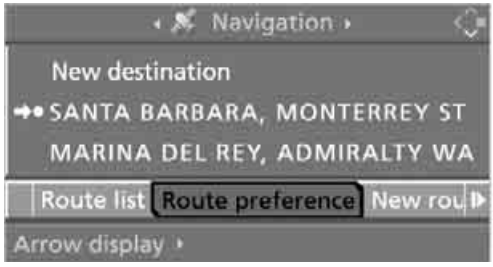
Selecting route

You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like while entering the destination and whenever the destination guidance is active.

The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g. whether it is a highway or a winding road. The road types are stored on the navigation DVD. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

Changing route criteria

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route preference" is selected and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

The various criteria are listed on the Control Display.

3. Select a route criterion for the route:
   - ▷ "With highways"
     Freeways and major traffic arteries are given priority.
   - ▷ "Avoid highways"
     Freeways are avoided where possible.
   - ▷ "Fast route"
     Fast route, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads.
   - ▷ "Short route"
     Short route, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be.
4. Press the controller.

The route criterion is selected.

5. If necessary, select an additional route criterion and then press the controller:
   - ▷ "Dynamic route"
     Automatic rerouting due to traffic obstructions. Depending on road type and the kind and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that it passes through the traffic obstruction.
   - ▷ "Avoid tollroads"
     Tollroads are avoided where possible.
   - ▷ "Avoid ferries"
     Ferries are avoided where possible.

To exit the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

The route criteria can also be changed in the arrow or map view:

1. Select the symbol for the route criterion and press the controller.
2. Select a route criterion and press the controller.

▷ If the route criterion "Avoid highways", "Avoid tollroads", or "Avoid ferries" is selected, the calculation time for the route can increase considerably.◀

CarManuals2.com

Word matching principle

The system supports the word matching principle to make it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored on the navigation DVD as the basis for instant response. The user benefits include:

- ▷ Names of specific locations can also vary from the official versions if you are using a spelling that is customary in another country.

  Example:

  Instead of the German spelling "München" you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".
- ▷ When you are entering the names of towns and streets, the system will complete them as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- ▷ The system only accepts name entries beginning with letters that are stored on the navigation DVD. The system will not accept non existent names and addresses.

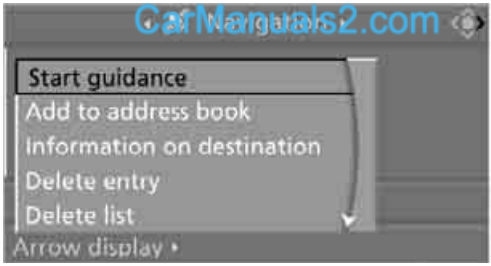
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
2. Select a destination from the destination list and press the controller or enter a new destination, refer to page 136.

3. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

After the route has been calculated, destination guidance is indicated by arrows or a map display on the Control Display.

The destination guidance can also be started in the arrow or map view:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

During destination guidance, you can operate other equipment via iDrive at any time. You will be punctually notified of a change of direction by spoken instructions and the display of the direction arrow.

About programmable memory buttons

Press the 1 ... 6 button on which the desired destination is stored. Also refer to page 23.

Terminating/continuing destination guidance

In arrow or map display

Select the symbol and press the controller.

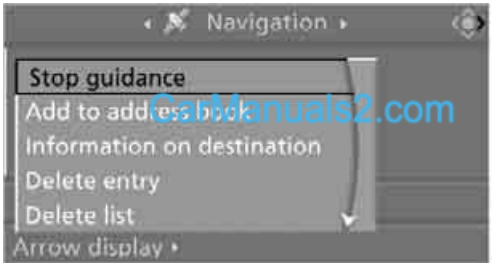
In destination list

This symbol indicates the current destination.

1. Select the current destination and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

2. Select "Stop guidance" and press the controller.



When you park the vehicle before reaching the entered destination, the following question is displayed before beginning the next trip: "Continue guidance to destination?".

The destination guidance starts automatically after a short time.

To start the destination guidance:
Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Displaying route

You have the option of displaying various views of the route during destination guidance.

▷ From another menu, you can change directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items, page 19.◀

Displaying arrow display

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Arrow display" is selected and press the controller.

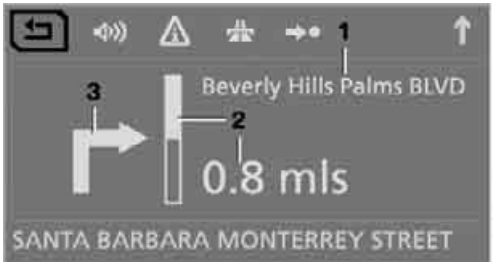
The arrow display is shown.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off
2 Manually displaying traffic information*
3 Selecting route criteria
4 Starting/ending destination guidance
5 Arrow to destination from a bird's eye view
6 Distance to the next change of direction
7 Current position
8 Direction of travel
   - ▷ Outline arrow:
     Destination guidance on the calculated route.
   - ▷ Solid arrow:
     Arrow shows the route to be calculated from a bird's eye view when the vehicle is not located in an area contained on the navigation DVD, e.g. in a parking structure.

Depending on the equipment, the estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are displayed in the top or bottom line of the Control Display.

Before a change in direction, the representation of the arrow changes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG



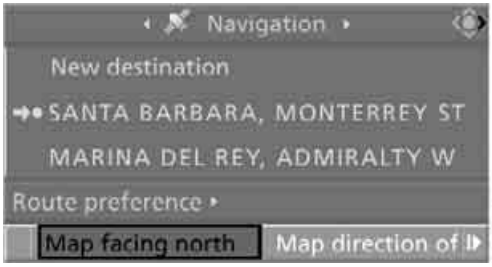
1 Street name for change of direction
2 Distance up to change of direction
3 Change of direction

To exit the menu:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Displaying map view

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired map view is selected:
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"



3. Press the controller.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off
2 Starting/ending destination guidance
3 Map-guided destination selection
4 Displaying the menu in which the information last selected can be displayed/hidden, refer to Selecting destination via information on page 142
5 Changing map display
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"
6 Changing route criteria
7 Manually displaying traffic information*
8 Arrow to destination from a bird's eye view

The estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are shown in the bottom line of the Control Display.

To exit the menu:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

At scales of less than 250 miles/500 km, you have the option of deciding whether to orient the map to north or toward your current direction of travel. At scales of 250 miles/500 km or greater, the map always points toward north.

Changing map display

Select the corresponding symbol and press the controller.
The next map display is displayed.

Changing scale

Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Displaying streets and towns/cities of route

You can have the roads and towns along the route displayed during destination guidance.

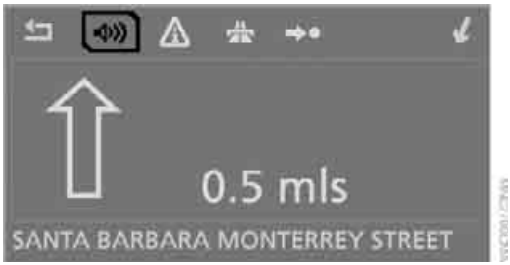
The distances remaining to be traveled on each individual road are also displayed.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route list" is selected and press the controller.

To exit the menu:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Destination guidance via voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off



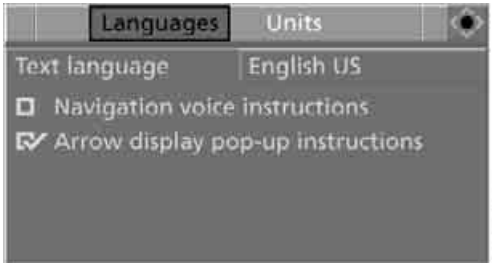
During destination guidance, voice instructions can be switched on or off in the arrow or map view:
Select the 🔊 symbol and press the controller.

To switch the voice instructions on and off at any time:

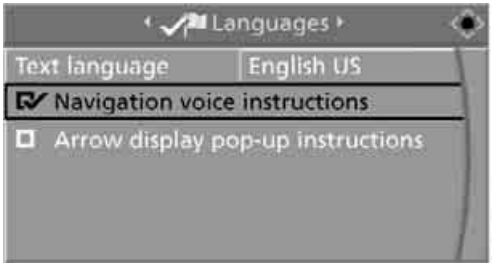
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

4. Turn the controller until "Language / Units" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Navigation voice instructions" and press the controller.



☑ The voice instructions are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use*.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Repeating and canceling voice instructions

With the programmable buttons on the steering wheel, you can also make the following settings, refer to page 57:

▷ Repeat the voice instruction:
Press button.

▷ Switch voice instructions on/off:
Press button longer.

CarManuals2.com

Setting volume of voice instructions

The volume can only be adjusted while a voice instruction is being output.

1. Repeat the last voice instruction, if necessary.
2. Turn the knob during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.

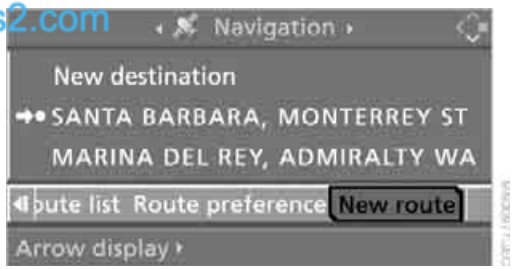
This volume is independent of the volume of the audio sources.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Bypassing route sections

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New route" is selected and press the controller.



3. Turn the controller to enter the desired number and press the controller.

The route is recalculated.

To exit from the menu without changing the route:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

Traffic information*

In many congested areas, you can receive traffic information transmitted by radio stations. The traffic conditions are monitored by traffic management centers and the traffic information is periodically updated.
During destination guidance, the traffic information relevant to your planned route is automatically displayed. Whether destination guidance is active or not, you can have the traffic information displayed in the map view or in the traffic info list.

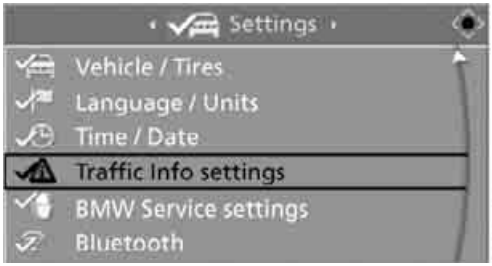
Switching reception of traffic information on/off

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

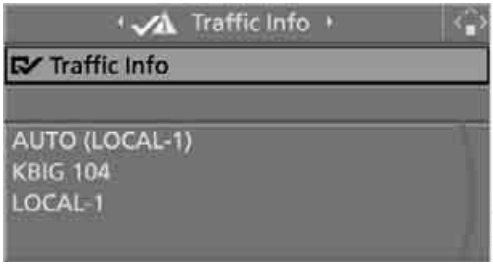
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Traffic Info settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.



The traffic information can be received and displayed.

"AUTO": automatic selection of the Traffic Info station with the best reception.

Depending on the station, either the station name, frequency, local number or other information is displayed.◀

Manually displaying traffic information

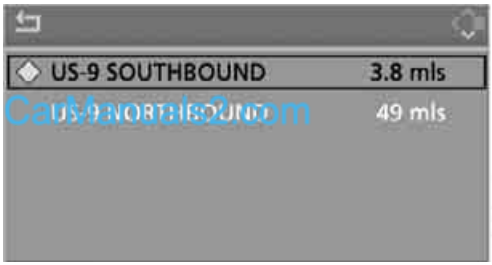
During destination guidance

During destination guidance, traffic information can be displayed in the arrow or map view.

If the ⚠ symbol is shown with a red border, traffic information is available for the planned route.

Select the ⚠ symbol and press the controller.

During destination guidance, the traffic information on the planned route is marked with a yellow diamond.

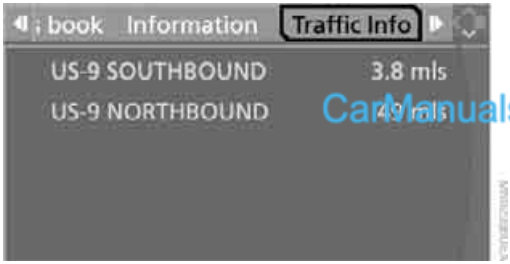


First the traffic information along the planned route is shown sorted according to the distance to the current vehicle position.

With destination guidance switched off

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".

3. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

First the traffic information along the planned route is shown sorted according to the distance to the current vehicle position.

Depiction of traffic information in map view

The traffic information symbols are shown in the map view up to a scale of 100 miles/200 km.

The section of the route affected by a traffic report as well as the number for the type of incident are displayed and hidden. This occurs as a function of the scale selected.

Displaying detailed traffic information

Select a traffic information item from the list and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Select the ↰ arrow and press the controller.

Symbols for traffic information

- Traffic event with map scales greater than 5 miles/10 km, arrow points in the direction of travel concerned.
- Several traffic events have been received. Select a smaller scale to display these individually.
- Traffic light failure
- Roadwork
- General traffic obstruction
  Transport of hazardous load
  Vehicle on wrong carriage way
- Danger
- Low clearance
- No parking
- Fog
- Heavy rain
- Slippery road
- Cross winds
- Smog
- Road closed
- Slow traffic
- Traffic back up
- Stopped traffic
- Icy roads
- Uneven surface
- Accident

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Lane closure

Delay

Police checkpoint

Slow traffic or other event

Stop-and-go traffic

Stopped traffic

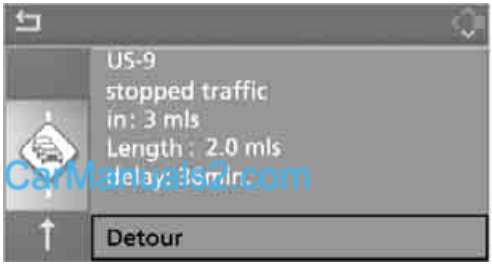
Traffic event in both directions of travel

Traffic information during destination guidance

System response will vary depending on whether or not "Dynamic route" is selected, refer to page 146.

Displaying traffic obstructions

If a traffic obstruction is reported to the navigation system and "Dynamic route" is not selected, you will be provided with specific information beginning at a distance of approx. 25 miles/40 km, e.g. the length of the congestion.
The last possible junction will be displayed shortly before this.



Select "Detour" and press the controller.
The navigation system determines a new route to avoid the traffic jam.

This information is also displayed if you have called up a different application on the Control Display.

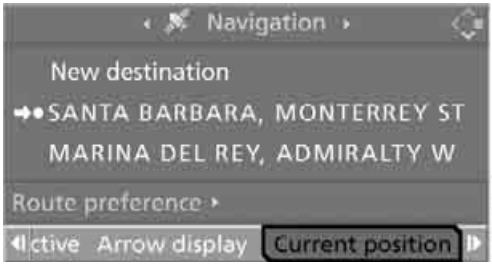
Dynamic route planning

When "Dynamic route" is selected, the route will be changed automatically in the event of a traffic obstruction. The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route. Depending on road type as well as the nature and extent of the traffic obstruction, the calculated route may also lead through the traffic obstruction.

Displaying current position

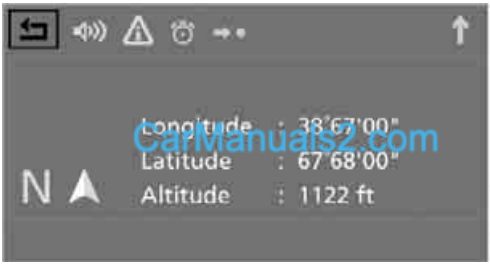
You can have your current position displayed even when the destination guidance is switched off.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Current position" is selected and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

The current position of your BMW is displayed.



If the navigation system is unable to identify a town/city, your current map coordinates will appear.

To exit the menu:
Select the ⮌ arrow and press the controller.

You can also have the current position displayed on a map, refer to page 150.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

What to do if ...

What to do if ...

- a navigation DVD is inserted, but an instruction to insert the DVD appears on the Control Display?
  The navigation DVD may not be the correct DVD for the navigation system. This information is indicated on the DVD label.
- you request the current position of your vehicle, but do not receive a precise display?
  The system is unable to receive enough GPS signals at your current position due to obstructions, your position is not yet available on your navigation DVD, or the system is in the process of calculating your position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- the destination guidance does not accept a destination?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.

CarManuals2.com

- the destination guidance does not accept an address without the street name?
  On the navigation DVD, no downtown area can be determined for the city or town entered. Enter any street, or a destination such as the railway station in the selected town, and then start the destination guidance.
- you want to enter a destination for the destination guidance, but it is not possible to select the letters for your desired entry?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. In this case, the system will not offer you any letters to choose from. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- the system stops furnishing directions on which way to turn as you approach intersections?
  You are driving in an area that has not yet been completely recorded on the navigation DVD. Instead of an arrow indicating a turn, you will see an arrow which indicates the general direction of your planned route. Or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new recommended route.
- the navigation system does not react to entries?
  If the battery was disconnected, it takes about 10 minutes before the system is once again operational.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 B

Entertainment

This chapter describes how to operate the radio and CD player and how to create their tone settings.

CarManuals2.com

On/off and tone

The following audio sources have shared controls and setting options:

- Professional* radio or Business radio
- CD player
- CD changer*

Controls

The audio sources can be operated using:

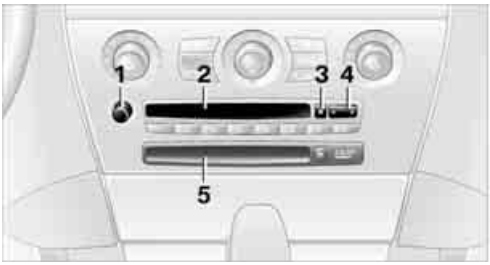
- Buttons in the area of the CD player
- iDrive
- Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11
- Programmable memory buttons, refer to page 22

Buttons near CD player

The layout of the buttons can vary depending on your vehicle's equipment.

One drive:

Two drives:



1 Entertainment sound output on/off, volume
   - Press: switch on/off.
     When the system is switched on, the most recently selected radio station or CD track is played.
   - Turn: adjust volume.
2 Drive for audio CDs
3 Eject CD
4 Station scan/track search
   - Change radio station.
   - Select track for CD player and CD changer.
5 Drive for navigation DVDs

Operation via iDrive

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".

You have the following choices:

- "FM" and "AM": radio reception
- "WB": weatherband station
- "SAT": satellite radio
- "CD": CD player or CD changer*
- "AUX": AUX-IN connection
- USB-audio interface*
- "Set": depending on the audio source, other adjustments can be made, e.g. with the radio: update station with strongest reception, store station, tone control, sample stations.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

From another menu, you can change directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items, page 19.◀

From radio readiness, the selected audio source is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Switching on/off

To switch the Entertainment sound output on and off:
Press knob **1** next to the CD player.

This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

For a single drive, the sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes with the ignition switched off.
Switch on the sound output again for this purpose.

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** next to the CD player until the desired volume is set.

You can also adjust the volume with the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

From radio readiness, the setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass, or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The tone settings are set for all audio sources at once.

From radio readiness, the settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing tone settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. "Audio" and press the controller.

The tone settings can also be selected if you have called up "Entertainment" in the start menu:
Select "Set" and then "Tone", pressing the controller after each selection.

Treble and bass

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Treble / Bass" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

2. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Treble" or "Bass".

3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Balance and fader

You can adjust the volume distribution in the same manner as "Treble / Bass".

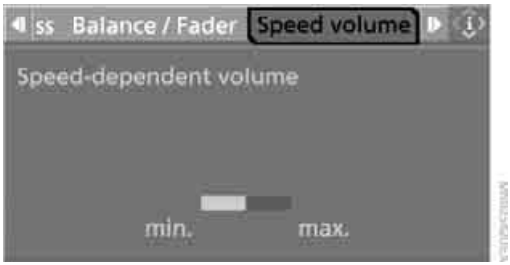
▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution

▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

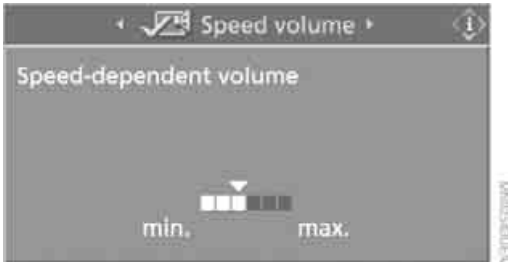
Speed-dependent volume control

The speed-dependent volume control increases the volume with increasing speed. You can set various stages for the increase in volume.

1. Select "Speed volume" and press the controller.



2. Turn the controller:
   The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.

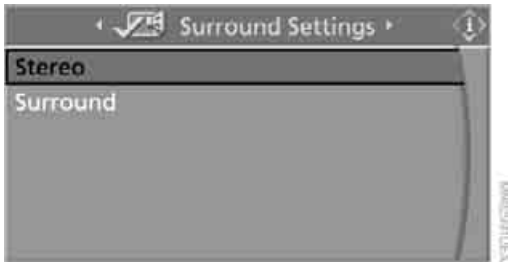


Individual high-end sound system*

You can choose between Stereo and Surround.

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.

2. Select "Stereo" or "Surround".



3. Press the controller.
   The spatial sound effect is activated.

Professional LOGIC7 HiFi System*

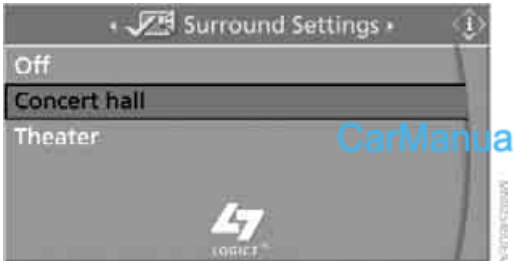
You can select a spatial sound effect that improves the spatial acoustics in all frequency ranges.

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

2. Select "Concert hall" or "Theater".



3. Press the controller.
   LOGIC7 spatial sound is switched on.

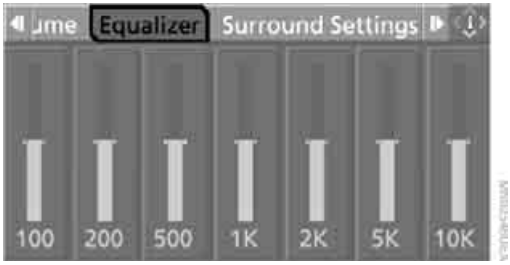
To cancel the spatial sound effect:
Select "Off" and press the controller.

LOGIC7 and the LOGIC7 logo are registered trade marks of Lexicon, Inc., a company of the Harman International Group.

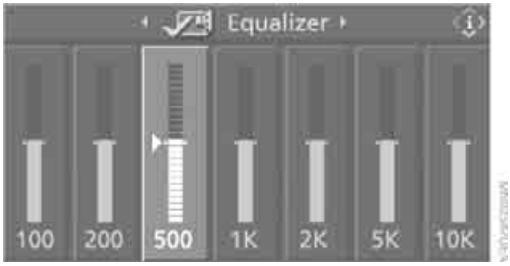
Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

1. Select "Equalizer" and press the controller.



2. Move the controller to the left or right to select the desired frequency range.



3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default settings.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Reset" is selected and press the controller.

With two drives: Select "Yes".

CarManuals2.com

Radio

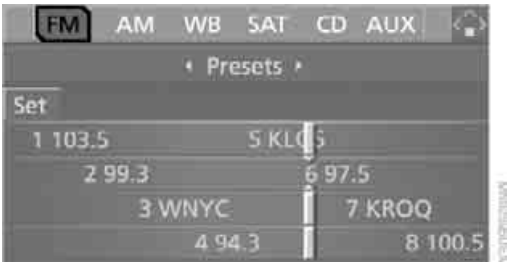
Your radio provides reception of the FM and AM wavebands.

CarManuals2.com

Listening to radio

Press the button if the sound output is switched off.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "FM" or "AM" is selected.



4. Press the controller.

Stations are shown on the Control Display on the basis of various selection criteria, e.g. "Presets".

If "Autostore" does not display any stations or if the stations displayed can no longer be received, update the stations with the strongest signal, refer to page 166.

Changing stations

Turn the controller.

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations with another selection criterion displayed.

Professional radio*

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "All stations":
  Stations that can currently be received in the "FM" waveband.
- ▷ "Autostore":
  Stations with the best reception on the "AM" waveband.
- ▷ "Presets":
  Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 166.
- ▷ "Manual":
  To set stations that can be received in addition to those displayed, refer to Selecting frequency manually on page 165.

Business radio

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "Autostore":
  Stations with the strongest signal, refer to page 166.
- ▷ "Presets":
  Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 166.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

▷ "Manual":
To set stations that can be received in addition to those displayed, refer to Selecting frequency manually on page 165.

Changing selection criteria

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations with another selection criterion displayed.

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

▷ "All stations":
Stations that can currently be received in the "FM" waveband.

▷ "Autostore":
Stations with the best reception on the "AM" waveband.

▷ "Presets":
Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 166.

▷ "Manual":
To set stations that can be received in addition to those displayed, refer to Selecting frequency manually on page 165.

1. Change into the second field from the top.
2. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.

Buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next displayed station.
You can also change stations with the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Sampling stations, scan

The system plays a brief sample from each of the stations on the current waveband.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
"Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

The stations are sampled.

To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the stations, and the radio remains on the current station.

CarManuals2.com

Buttons next to CD player

To sample the stations, press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

To stop scanning, press the button again.

Selecting frequency manually

With "Manual" you can select stations that are received in addition to those displayed.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.

3. Select "Manual" and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller to set a certain frequency.

Updating stations with best reception

Radio Professional on "AM" and Radio Business:
If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations with the best reception.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller. "Set" is selected.

4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

5. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.

The display of the stations with the best reception is updated. The frequencies of the stations are displayed.

Storing stations

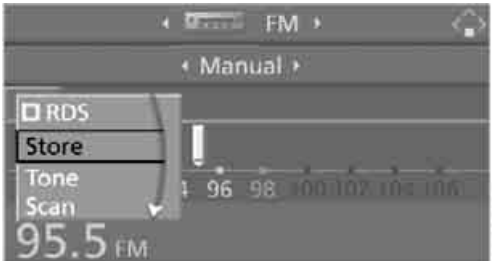
Via iDrive

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.
3. Select the desired frequency or station. "Set" is selected.

4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

5. Select "Store" and press the controller.



"Presets" is displayed.

6. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
7. Press the controller.
The station is stored.

The stations of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

From radio readiness, the stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

About programmable memory buttons

You can also store a station on the programmable memory buttons, also refer to page 22.

1. Select a station.
2. Press and hold desired button 1 ... 6.

Changing a memory position

1. Select "Presets" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired station.
"Set" is selected.
3. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.

CarManuals2.com

4. Select "Store" and press the controller.

5. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
The number of the memory position appears beside the name or frequency of the station.
6. Press the controller.
The station is stored.

RDS Radio Data System

In the FM frequency range, additional information is transmitted via RDS. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. If the reception is weak or disrupted, it can take some time before the station names are displayed.

Switching RDS on/off*

1. Select "FM" and press the controller.
"Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "RDS" and press the controller.

RDS is activated.

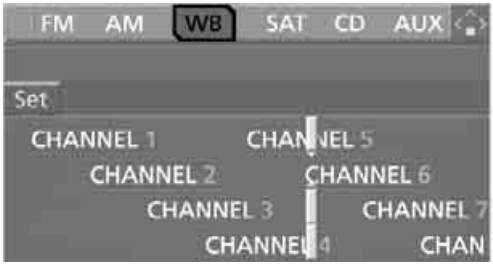
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Weather news flashes*

Weather Radio is a service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) of the US Department of Trade. Weather news flashes are repeated every 4 to 6 minutes and are routinely updated at intervals of 1 to 3 hours, and more often when necessary. Most stations operate 24 hours a day. In case of a storm, the National Weather Service interrupts the routine weather news and transmits special warning messages instead. If you have a question about NOAA Weather Radio, please contact the nearest office of the National Weather Service. Details are also provided on the Internet at www.nws.noaa.gov.

Calling up weather news flashes

1. Select "WB" and press the controller.



2. Select a station.

The station for weather news flashes may be unavailable in some regions.

High Definition Radio*

Many stations transmit both analog and digital signals. You can receive these stations digitally and with improved sound quality.

A digital radio network must be available in order to receive digital stations.

HD Radio™ technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field. Turn the controller until "HD radio" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

6. Select "Off" and press the controller.

The reception of digital stations is activated.

HD This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.

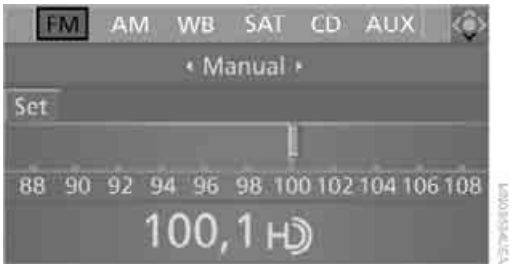
With some stations the digital signals are not transmitted simultaneously with the analog signals. If you are in an area in which the selected station is not continuously received digitally, playback changes between analog and digital reception. This can result in repetitions or interruptions. In this case it may be advisable to deactivate digital radio reception.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Selecting programs of a digital station*

Some stations transmit several programs. To select one of these programs:

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.



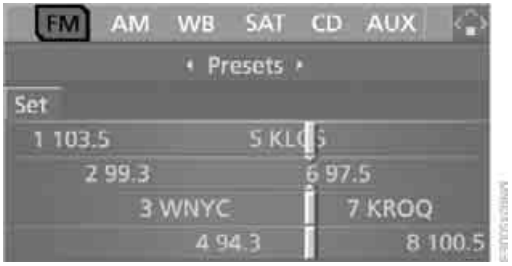
2. Select "Manual" and press the controller.
3. Select a station that is received digitally.
   HD This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.
4. Switch to the next program of the digital station with the ◄ ► buttons on the radio or the steering wheel.

You can store a station, refer to page 166.

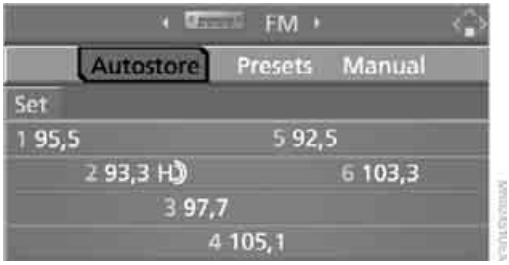
Updating stations offering digital reception

If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations with the best reception.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.



2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.



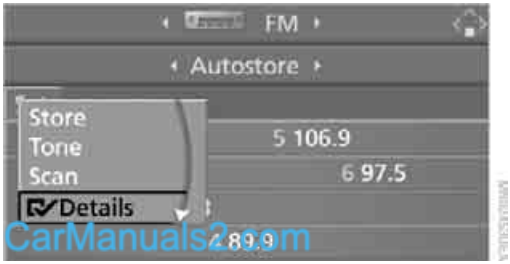
4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Autostore HD" and press the controller.

The display of the stations offering digital reception is updated. This can take up to 2 minutes.

Displaying additional information

With the digital stations, additional information on the current track is displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Select a station and press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

The information is displayed.

If a digital station is received again when the station is changed, the additional information will be displayed again following a brief interruption.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Satellite radio*

You can receive over 100 different channels with high sound quality.

The channels are offered to you in predefined packages. To receive the channels of your choice, you must have this package enabled.

With this new technology the signal may fail, causing interruptions in reception.◀

Enabling or disabling channels

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Select "SAT".

4. Press the controller.

The channels are displayed.
✔ These channels are enabled.

CarManuals2.com

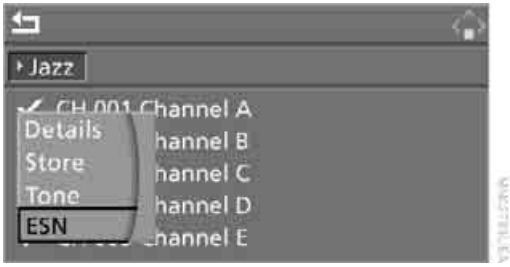
Enabling

1. Select a channel that has not yet been enabled and press the controller.
   A telephone number and the electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

   The electronic serial number is required for enabling or disabling.◀
2. To enable the channels:
   Dial the phone number.

Disabling

1. Select an enabled channel and press the controller.



2. Select "ESN" and press the controller.
   The electronic serial number, ESN, is displayed.

   The electronic serial number is required for disabling.◀
3. To disable the channels:
   Dial the phone number.

Selecting and storing channel

1. Select "SAT" and press the controller.

Channels or categories appear in the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

2. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Presets":
     Up to twelve channels you have stored previously.
   - ▷ "All channels":
     All channels are displayed.
   - ▷ "Categories":
     All channels, sorted by category, e.g. news, jazz.

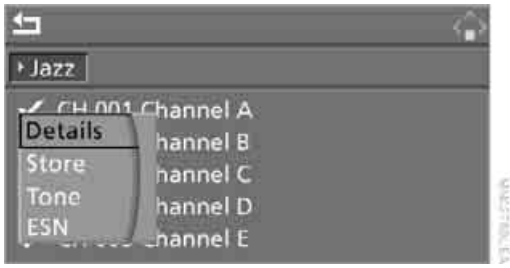
3. Press the controller.
4. If "Categories" has been selected:
   Select the desired category and press the controller.

The channels of this category are displayed.

5. ✔ Select a channel marked with this symbol.

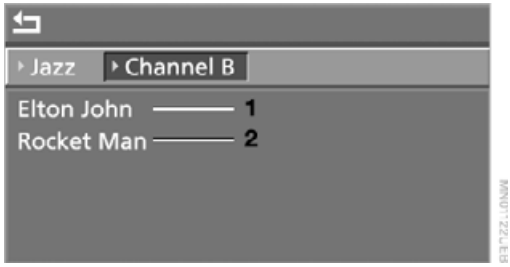
CarManuals2.com

6. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
7. Select "Details" and press the controller.



Additional information

The name of the channel and additional information on the current track are displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

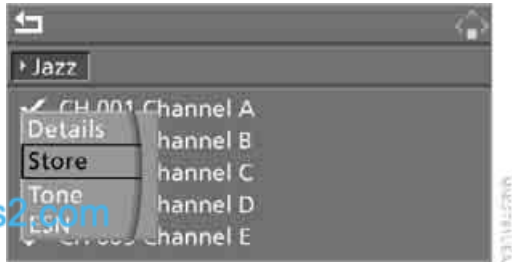


1 Artist

2 Track

Storing channel

1. Select desired channel.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Store" and press the controller.



"Presets" is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller to select a memory location and press the controller.

The channel is stored. The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

Changing channel with buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next enabled channel.

Notes

If no signal can be received for more than 4 seconds, a message is displayed on the Control Display.

▷ Reception may not be possible for certain reasons, e.g. environmental influences or topographical conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to tall buildings, near trees, mountains or other sources of radio interference.
Reception is usually possible again as soon as the signal is available again.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CD player and CD changer*

Listening to CDs

Compressed audio files*

CDs with compressed audio files, i.e. MP3, can be played by the CD player, but not by the CD changer.

CD player: starting CD

With two drives:
The upper drive is for audio CDs.

Inserting CD

Insert the CD into the drive with the labeled side up. The CD is retracted.
Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. For CDs with compressed audio files, it can take up to approx. 1 minute to read in the data depending on the directory structure.

Via iDrive

To start playback when there is already a CD in the drive:

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

4. With a CD changer, change to the second field from the top and turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.
   The CD player is started.

Playback starts automatically if the sound output is switched on.

About programmable memory buttons

You can store the CD player function on the programmable memory buttons. To start the CD player, refer to page 22.

Eject CD

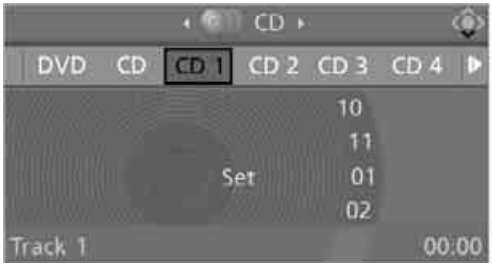
Press the ⏏ button next to CD player.
The CD emerges slightly from the drive.

CD changer: starting CD

Fill the CD magazine and insert, refer to page 178.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.
4. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the desired CD, CD 1 - 6, is selected and press the controller.



At the end of the last track, the next CD will be selected.

If the CD magazine has been newly filled, playback begins with the lowest CD, e.g. CD 1, track 1.

The CD magazine's load status is indicated on the Control Display.

About programmable memory buttons

You can store a CD compartment of the CD changer on the programmable memory buttons. To start the CD changer, refer to page 22.

Selecting a track

Buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction repeatedly until you reach the desired track.
The CD will start play at the start of the track.
The track is displayed on the Control Display.

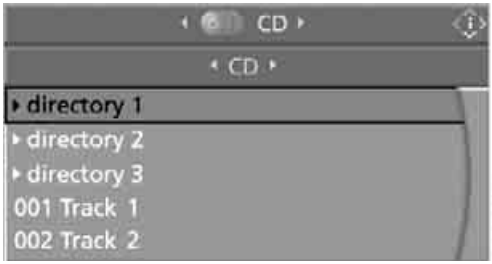
You can also change the track with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Via iDrive

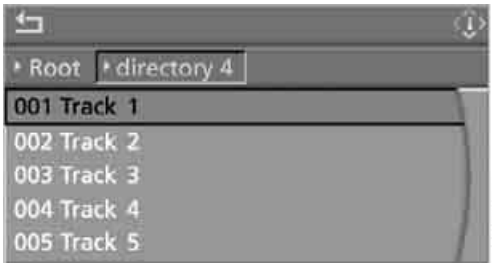
Select a track by turning the controller.

Compressed audio files*

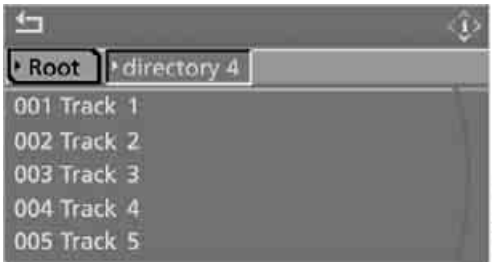
1. Select the directory if necessary and press the controller.



2. Select the track and press the controller.



To change the directory:
Select the directory and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

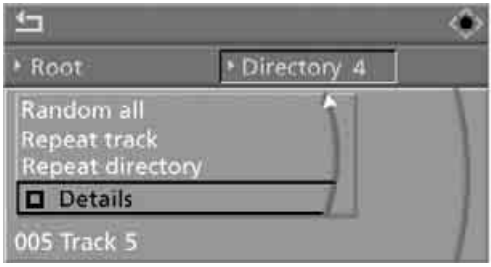
To exit from the menu:
Select the ↩ arrow and press the controller.

You can also store a particular track on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 22.

Displaying information on track*

With compressed audio files, you can display any information stored on the current track, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



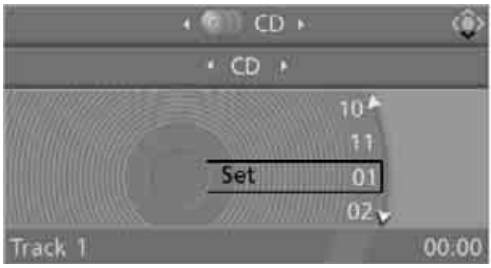
The information for the current track are displayed.

From radio readiness, the setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

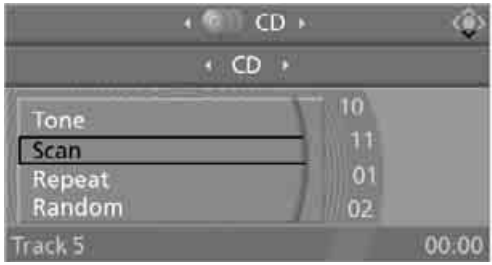
Sampling tracks, scan

The system plays a brief sample from each of the tracks on the current CD.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.



2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.



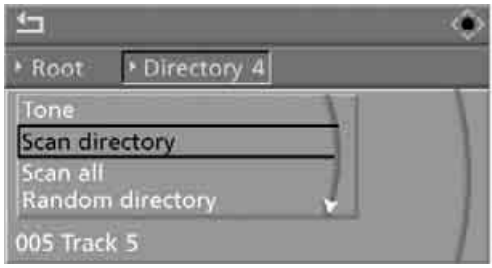
To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the tracks, and the player remains on the current track.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To sample all tracks of the current directory, select "Scan directory" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To sample all tracks of the CD, select "Scan all" and press the controller.



To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan directory" or "Scan all" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling, and the player remains on the current track.

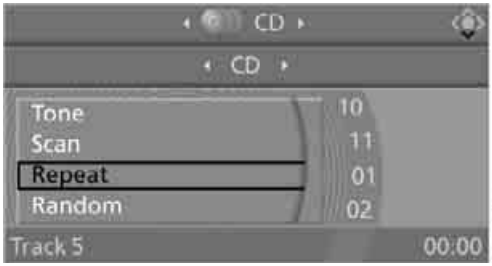
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Repeating a track

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.

2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.



The current track on the CD is repeated.

To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller again.
2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To repeat the selected track, select "Repeat track" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To repeat all tracks of the current directory, select "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" or "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

Random play sequence

In this mode, the tracks on the current CD are played once in a random sequence.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

To stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To play all tracks of the current directory in random order, select "Random directory" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To play all tracks of the CD in random order, select "Random all" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

To stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random directory" or "Random all" and press the controller.

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons next to CD player:

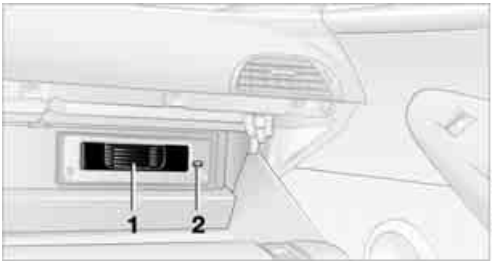
Press and hold the ◁ ▷ button for the corresponding direction.

CD magazine

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is installed in the glove compartment.

Removing CD magazine

To insert CDs into the CD magazine **1** or remove them from it, you must first remove the magazine from the CD changer:

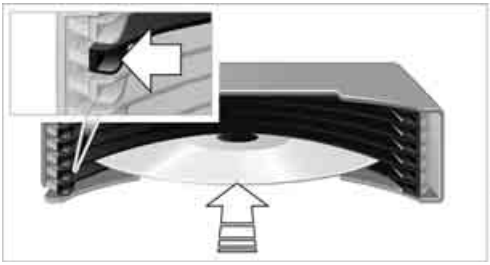


Press button **2**: the CD magazine **1** slides out.

Wait at least 2 seconds before pushing in the magazine again so that the inserted CDs can be read in again.

Inserting/removing CDs into/from CD magazine

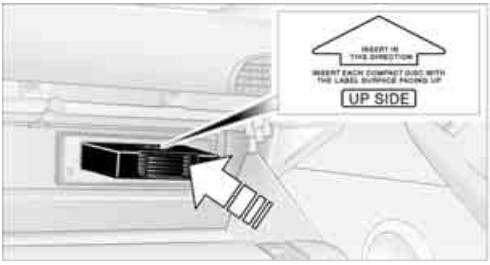
When inserting or removing CDs, remember to hold them by their edges, taking care to avoid touching the data side with its reflective CD memory surface.



Inserting CDs:
Insert one CD into each compartment of the magazine with the labeled side up.

Removing CDs:
Pull out the desired tray and remove the CD.

Inserting CD magazine



Push in the CD magazine as far as possible in the direction of the arrow.

The CD changer reads in the loaded CDs and is then ready for operation.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Notes

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result.
Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat buildup and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. CD singles, as otherwise the CD/DVD or the adapter can jam and may no longer eject properly.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD can jam and will no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this can be due to one of the following causes.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, e.g. inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or high age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

Damaged CDs/DVDs

Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.
Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F/50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CarManuals2.com

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

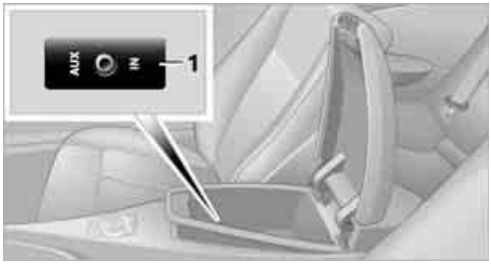
Care

If necessary, clean the reflective scanning side of the CDs/DVDs with a commercially available cleaning cloth by wiping in straight lines from the center outward.

AUX-IN connection

You can connect an external audio device, e.g. an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle speakers. The sound can be adjusted via iDrive.

Connecting



For audio playback via the vehicle speakers, connect the headphones or the line-out connection of the device to the socket **1** with a 1/8 in/3,5 mm jack plug.

Starting audio playback

The audio device must be switched on.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "AUX" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "AUX IN" and press the controller.
5. Adjust volume and sound if necessary.

About programmable memory buttons

CarManuals2.com

You can save the audio AUX function on the programmable memory buttons. To start audio playback, refer to page 22.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

USB-audio interface/mobile phone audio interface*

You can connect audio devices, e.g. an iPod/iPhone or a USB device (MP3 player, USB flash drive), to the USB-audio interface. You can then operate these via iDrive.

When using an iPhone/mobile phone as a music player, connect the device to the snap-in adapter, refer to the separate operating instructions. Playback is only possible if a device is not connected to the USB-audio interface.

The system can play back common audio files, e.g. MP3, WMA, WAV (PCM) and AAC, as well as playback lists in the M3U format.

Due to the large number of audio devices available on the market, operation via the vehicle cannot be ensured for every audio device.

Ask your BMW center which audio devices are suitable.

Connecting

Lift up the center armrest.

1 Connection for audio playback: 1/8 in/3,5 mm jack plug

2 USB-audio interface

iPod/iPhone

To connect the iPod/iPhone, use the BMW cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone. For more information, please contact a BMW center or consult our website: bmwusa.com

CarManuals2.com

To play audio tracks over the vehicle's loudspeaker system, connect the iPod/iPhone to ports **1** and **2**.

The iPod/iPhone menu structure is supported by the USB-audio interface.

USB device

To connect the device, use a flexible adapter cable to protect the USB-audio interface and your USB device against physical damage.◀

For audio playback via the vehicle speakers, connect the USB device to the connection **1**.

After connecting for the first time, the information of all tracks (e.g. artist, music genre) and the playback lists of the USB device are transferred to the vehicle. This process can take some time. The time required is dependent on the USB device and on the number of tracks.

During the transfer you can select the tracks via the directories and file names.

Following the transfer you can call up the tracks via the information and playback lists.

Information from up to four USB devices can be stored in the vehicle, or a total of approx. 16 000 tracks.

If a fifth USB device is connected, the information of the tracks of the first USB device stored in the vehicle is deleted.

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.◀

Starting audio playback

Via iDrive

If the audio device has a device name, this will be displayed if possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to call up "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "AUX" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "USB" or the name of the audio device and press the controller.

5. The playback starts with the first track.

About programmable memory buttons

You can store the "USB" function on the programmable memory keys to start audio playback, refer to page 22.

Selecting a track

You can call up the tracks via the playback lists and information. With USB devices you can also call up the tracks via the file directory.

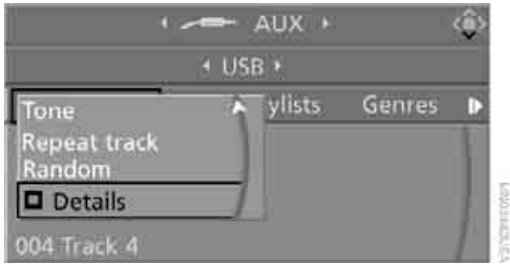
1. Make your selection, e.g. "Playlists" or "Artists", and press the controller.

2. Select the track and press the controller.

Displaying information on track

You can display any information stored on the current track, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller during playback.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



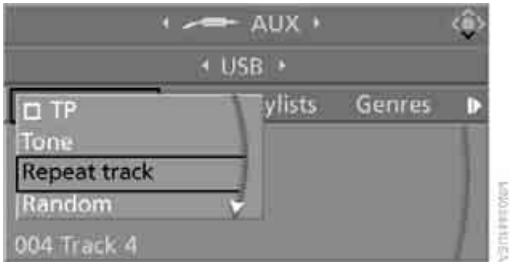
The information for the current track are displayed.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Repeating a track

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" and press the controller.



To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" and press the controller.

Random play sequence

You can play back the tracks of the selected list in random order, e.g. all tracks of an artist.

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

End random playback:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons next to CD player:

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Notes

Do not subject the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g. extremely high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the audio device. Otherwise, the audio device can be damaged and the resulting distraction can reduce road safety while driving.◀

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g. bit rates greater than 256 Kbit/s, proper playback cannot always be ensured.

CarManuals2.com

Connecting instructions

- ▷ The USB/audio interface supplies the connected audio device with power, provided the audio device supports this function. It is therefore unnecessary to connect the audio device to a socket in the vehicle during operation.
- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB-audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB-audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard disks.
- ▷ Do not use the audio interface to recharge external devices.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Communications

This chapter summarizes how to operate your mobile phone using iDrive or voice control and how to use BMW Assist or BMW TeleServices.

CarManuals2.com

Telephoning*

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with a full mobile phone preparation package. After pairing a suitable mobile phone in the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via iDrive, with the buttons on the steering wheel and by voice.

A mobile phone that has been paired once is automatically detected again with the engine running or the ignition switched on as soon as it is in the vehicle interior. The logon data of up to four mobile phones can be stored simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected simultaneously, the respective last mobile phone paired can be operated via the vehicle.

Using a phone in your vehicle

Using snap-in adapter*

The so-called snap-in adapter, a mobile phone cradle, enables the battery to be charged and the mobile phone to be connected to the external antenna of your vehicle. This ensures improved network reception and a consistent voice reproduction quality. Ask your BMW center which mobile phones snap-in adapters are offered for.

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate operating instructions for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

⚠ Only make entries when traffic conditions allow you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Suitable mobile phones

Ask your BMW center which mobile phones with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package or which mobile phones snap-in adapters are available for. These mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual with a certain software version. Malfunctions can occur with other mobile phones.

Care instructions

You can find valuable information on this topic under Care, starting on page 206 and the separate operating instructions for the mobile phone.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone* using:

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11
- ▷ iDrive, refer to page 16
- ▷ Voice commands, refer to page 197
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons, refer to page 22

Avoid operating a mobile phone detected by the vehicle with the keypad of the mobile phone, otherwise malfunctions can occur.

Placing phone calls with BMW Assist system*: BMW Assist calls

You can use the BMW Assist system via the hands-free unit for BMW Assist calls.

When the status information "BMW Assist" or "BMW Service" is displayed in "Communication", only BMW Assist calls are possible.

It may not be possible to establish a telephone connection using the mobile phone while a connection is being established to BMW Assist or while a call to BMW Assist is already in progress. If this happens, you must log off the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

mobile phone from the vehicle if you wish to place a call with the mobile phone.

Commissioning

Pairing mobile phone in vehicle

The following prerequisites must be met:

- ▷ Suitable mobile phone: the mobile phone is supported by the full mobile phone preparation package. Information on this subject is also provided on the Internet at: bmwusa.com
- ▷ The mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The Bluetooth link on the vehicle, refer to page 191, and on the mobile phone is active.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, the mobile phone may need presetting: e.g. using the following menu items:
  - ▷ Bluetooth activated
  - ▷ Connection must be allowed without requiring further confirmation
  - ▷ Reconnect
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone model, the setting energy saving mode can, for example, result in vehicle failing to detect the paired mobile phone.
- ▷ For pairing purposes, define any 4-16-digit number as a Bluetooth passkey, e.g. 25081107. A long and complex number offers the best protection against unauthorized access. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required after pairing is successful.
- ▷ The ignition is switched on.

⚠ Only pair the mobile phone with the vehicle stopped, otherwise the passengers and other road users can be endangered due to a lack of attentiveness on the part of the driver.◀

CarManuals2.com

Switching on ignition

1. Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on the ignition by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

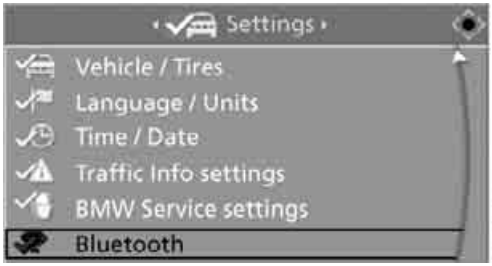
Preparation via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

3. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.

4. Press the controller to open the i menu.
5. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

6. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.

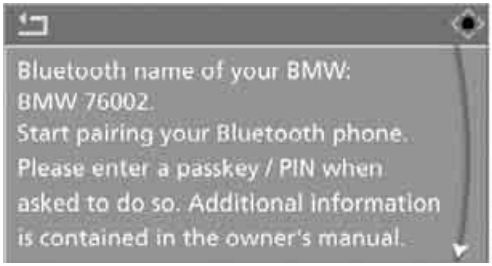


7. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.

8. Select "Pair new phone" and press the controller.

9. Select "Start pairing" and press the controller.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.



Preparation with mobile phone

10. Additional operations must be carried out on the mobile phone and differ depending on the model, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone, e.g. find, connect or pair under Bluetooth device. The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is also shown on the mobile phone display.

11. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

Pairing

Depending on your mobile phone, you will first be requested consecutively via the display of your mobile phone or iDrive to enter the Bluetooth passkey you specified.

12. Enter the Bluetooth passkey.
Depending on the mobile phone, approx. 30 seconds are available for entering the Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and on the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

13. Move the highlight marker to the third field from the top, select "Confirm passkey" and press the controller.

14. Wait several seconds until the "Communication" menu is displayed.

The next time you use the mobile phone inside the vehicle, it will be recognized within a few minutes as long as the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

▷ With some mobile phone models it may be necessary to make certain settings for a permanent Bluetooth link, e.g. via the menu item Authorization or Secure connection. Refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transmitted to your vehicle. This transmission is dependent on your mobile phone, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone if necessary, and can take several minutes.

If not all phone book entries are displayed:

- ▷ Transfer all phone book entries from the SIM card to the mobile phone if necessary.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired consecutively. When you pair a fifth mobile phone, the pairing data of the mobile phone for which the pairing data were stored first in the vehicle will be deleted.

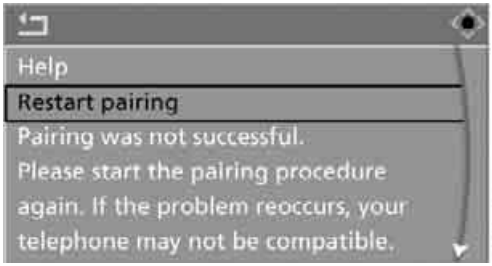
Checking if pairing is unsuccessful

- ▷ Is the mobile phone supported by the mobile phone preparation package? Information on this subject is also provided on the Internet at: bmwusa.com.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? The same Bluetooth passkey must be entered both on the mobile phone display and via iDrive.
- ▷ Have you required longer than 30 seconds to enter the Bluetooth passkey?
- ▷ Only a limited number of devices can be connected to the mobile phone. Delete the connection to other devices if necessary.
- ▷ The mobile phone no longer reacts? Switch the mobile phone off and then on again or disconnect the power supply.

Carmanuals2.com

To repeat pairing:

1. Select "Restart pairing" and press the controller.

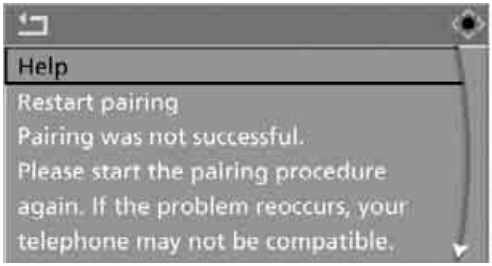


2. Repeat steps 9 to 14.

If pairing was repeatedly unsuccessful, contact BMW Customer Relations.

To call BMW Customer Relations:

Select "Help" and press the controller.



The phone number of BMW Customer Relations and information required for pairing is shown on the display. With mobile phones already paired, you can select the phone number of BMW Customer Relations to establish the connection.

List of paired mobile phones

The mobile phones for which the vehicle has stored the pairing data can be displayed. If several paired mobile phones are detected by the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

vehicle simultaneously, you can operate the mobile phone highest up in the list via the vehicle.

You can change the order of the mobile phones in the list. As long as a mobile phone is selected in this list, the mobile phones cannot be operated via the vehicle.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
5. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.
6. Select the desired mobile phone.

   With two drives:

   ▷ Move the controller backwards to change into the bottom field.

   ▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

   With a single drive:

   ▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

7. Select "Move device up" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

The selected mobile phone is moved upward by one position.

Unpairing mobile phone from vehicle

If you no longer want to operate a mobile phone via the vehicle, you can delete the pairing data of the mobile phone.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Switch off the mobile phone.
2. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
3. Press the controller to open the i menu.
4. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller. "Bluetooth" is selected.
6. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.
7. Select the desired mobile phone.

   With two drives:

   ▷ Move the controller backwards to change into the bottom field.

   ▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

With a single drive:

▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

8. Select "Delete device" and press the controller.

The unpaired mobile phone is deleted from the list.
The phone book entries and the lists of stored phone numbers are also deleted.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

▷ Bluetooth technology is not approved in all countries. Observe the applicable local regulations. Temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone if necessary.
If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you cannot operate your mobile phone via the vehicle and other devices with a Bluetooth interface can be used via the mobile phone, e.g. a laptop computer.◀

To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and your mobile phone:

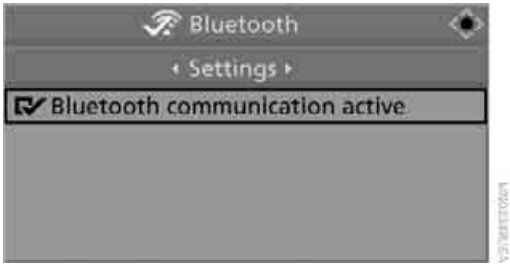
1. Press the MENU button to open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.

5. Move the highlight marker to the second field from the top, select "Settings" and press the controller.

6. Select "Bluetooth communication active" and press the controller to activate or deactivate the link.



☑ The Bluetooth link is activated.
☐ The Bluetooth link is deactivated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Adjusting volume

Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

You can also adjust the volume with the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions via iDrive:

- ▷ Accepting/refusing a call
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers from the phone book
- ▷ Dialing stored phone numbers, e.g. from the list of accepted calls.
- ▷ Ending a call

When the ignition is switched off or in radio readiness, e.g. after taking the remote control out of the ignition lock, you can continue an ongoing call via the hands-free system for several minutes.

Speech quality

If the person you are talking to cannot understand you well, this may be due to excessively loud background noises. The full mobile phone preparation package can compensate for these noises to a certain degree. To optimize the speech quality during a call, we recommend that you:

- ▷ Reduce background noises, e.g. by closing the windows, reducing the air volume of the automatic climate control or pointing the opened front vent outlets downward
- ▷ Reduce volume of hands-free system

Requirements

- ▷ The logon data of the mobile phone are stored in the vehicle and the mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ The mobile phone is detected by the vehicle.

Opening Communication

Many of the functions described below are controlled using the "Communication" menu.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.

CarManuals2.com

2. Move the controller forward to open "Communication".

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

Accepting a call

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternative:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

"Accept" is selected.
Press the controller.

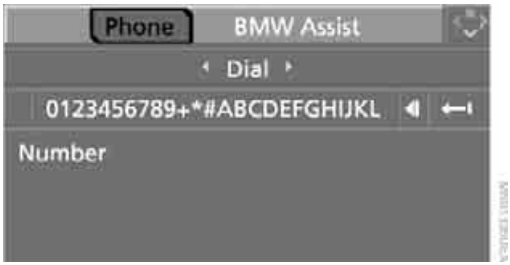
Rejecting a call

Select "Reject" and press the controller.
The caller is diverted to your mailbox if it has been activated.

Calling

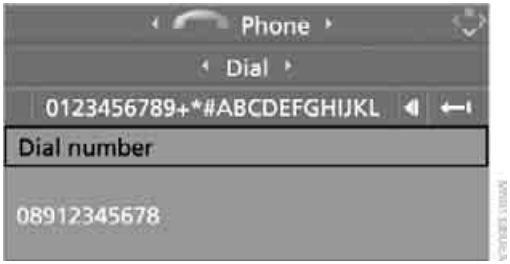
Dialing phone numbers

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.



2. Select "Dial" and press the controller.
3. Enter the desired phone number by dialing the individual digits and pressing the controller.
   Always enter the complete phone number consisting of national dialing code, area code, and phone number.
   The letters correspond to the digits on the keypad of the mobile phone.

   To delete the last digit:
   Move the controller toward the right to select the ⟵ arrow and press the controller.
4. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.



   Alternative:
   Press the button on the steering wheel.

For your phone number to be displayed to the person you are calling, the display of phone numbers must be enabled by your service provider.

About programmable memory buttons

You can store and request phone numbers using the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 22.

Ending a call

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternative:

1. Select the phone number and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

2. "End call" is selected:
   Press the controller.

Dialing a phone number from phone book or a phone number stored in a list

Phone numbers you have called, incoming calls and the entries of the phone book are stored in lists when the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. If the caller is entered in the phone book, the name of the entry is displayed instead of the phone number.
You can select the desired subscriber from the list and establish the connection.

Five lists are available:

- ▷ "A - Z"
  The entries in your mobile phone's phone book, consisting of names and phone numbers, are sorted alphabetically.
- ▷ "Top 8"
  The eight numbers dialed most frequently from the "A - Z" phone book are automatically stored in the Top 8 list.
- ▷ "Redial"
  The last eight phone numbers you dialed are automatically stored. The last number dialed is at the top of the list.
- ▷ "Missed calls"
  The phone numbers of the last eight calls that were not accepted are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.
- ▷ "Received calls"
  The phone numbers of the last eight accepted calls are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.

Dialing a phone number from phone book

The "A - Z" list is available for your phone book entries. The phone book entries appear on the Control Display.

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. To limit the number of displayed entries, select the first letter of the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

5. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

If different phone numbers are stored in the mobile phone under one name, e.g. office and home, the name is shown once for each phone number.

You can change a phone number stored in the phone book, e.g. to call a specific extension:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select "Add digits" and press the controller.
5. Change the phone number.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

6. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.

Dialing a phone number stored in a list

To select an entry and establish a connection:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select list and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Top 8"
   - ▷ "Redial"
   - ▷ "Missed calls"
   - ▷ "Received calls"

3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

4. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

Deleting individual entries

1. Select the desired entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete" and press the controller.

The entry is deleted.

Deleting entire list

1. Select an entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete all numbers" and press the controller.

3. If applicable, select "Yes" and press the controller.
   The list is deleted.

BMW Contact*

If you are not enabled for BMW Assist, you can have several service phone numbers displayed:

- ▷ BMW Roadside Assistance* when you require breakdown assistance
- ▷ BMW center, e.g. when you want to make an appointment for service
- ▷ BMW Customer Relations* for information on all aspects of your vehicle

If BMW Assist is enabled, refer to page 201.

CarManuals2.com

You can dial the displayed service phone numbers if your mobile phone is paired in the vehicle:

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Select "BMW Contact" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Contact Numbers" and press the controller.

5. Select one of the following menu items and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Roadside Assistance"
   - ▷ "Customer Relations"
   - ▷ "Service Request"
6. Select "Call" and press the controller.

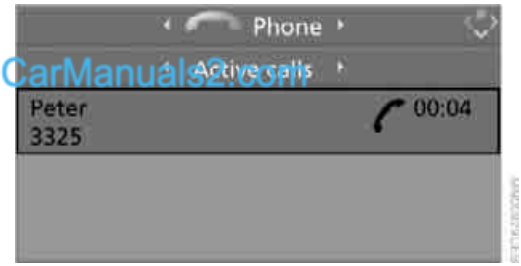
Contact is established.

Transmitting phone number via tone dialing method

The tone dialing method is required for access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g. remote checking of an answering machine.

This function is available when a connection has been established.

1. Establish connection.



2. With a single drive:
   Press the controller.
   Select "Keypad" and press the controller.
   With two drives:
   Move the controller backwards until the bottom field is selected.
3. Select the desired character and press the controller.
   Each character is sent immediately and confirmed by a tone depending on the mobile phone model.

Changing between mobile phone and hands-free system

From mobile phone to hands-free system*

You can continue calls begun outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle via the hands-free system when the motor is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically changes over to the hands-free mode.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

For mobile phones that do not automatically change over to the hands-free mode:

Depending on the mobile phone model used, the conversation can be continued via the hands-free system if necessary. Refer to the display on your mobile phone and/or your mobile phone's operating instructions.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

When you telephone via the hands-free system, you can also continue the call via the mobile phone if necessary, depending on the mobile phone model. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

As an alternative, you can deactivate the Bluetooth link.

Depending on your mobile phone model, poor reception of the wireless communications network can result in the system changing from the hands-free system to the mobile phone.

Operation by voice*

The concept

You can operate your mobile phone without having to remove your hands from the steering wheel. When making your entries, you will be supported by announcements or questions in many cases.

The same prerequisites as for operation via iDrive apply, refer to page 192.

Example: Dialing phone numbers

To start the dialog:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Voice commands

Activating system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
   An acoustic signal indicates that you can say commands.
2. Say the command.

Ending/canceling operation by voice

Press the button on the steering wheel
or

›Cancel‹.

In dialogs where text is spoken, not a command, e.g. a name, canceling is only possible using the button on the steering wheel.

Having possible commands read aloud

The system understands default commands that must be spoken word for word.
You can have the possible commands spoken by the system at any point:

›Help‹.

CarManuals2.com

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

The system recognizes digits from zero to nine.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

You say	The voice control answers
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
e.g. ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on equipment: ››123 456 7890. Continue?‹‹ or ››123 456 7890. And next?‹‹
›Dial‹	››Dialing number‹‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Setting volume of instructions

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:

Turn the knob during instructions.

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
2. Say the phone number.
   For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹.

The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone number

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting phone number

›Delete‹

All digits entered up to this point are deleted.

Voice phone book

Operating by voice command requires a personal voice phone book.

- ▷ With separate drives for audio CDs and navigation DVDs, the entries are automatically adopted from your mobile phone's memory.
- ▷ With a single drive, the entries must be input by voice and are independent of your mobile phone's memory. In this case, it is not possible to use voice command either to call phone numbers stored in the mobile phone or to store new numbers. Up to 50 entries can be set up. An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

Creating and editing voice phone book*

Store entry:

An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

1. ›Save name‹.
2. Speak the name.
   The spoken length of the names in the phone book must not exceed approx. 2 seconds.
3. Speak the phone number after being requested to do so by the system.
4. To store the phone number:
   ›Save‹.

CarManuals2.com

Delete entry:

You can delete any entry from the voice phone book.

1. ›Delete name‹.
   The dialog for deleting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Delete all entries:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

›Delete phone book‹ deletes all entries in the phone book.

1. ›Delete phone book‹.
   The dialog for deleting phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the repeated prompt with ›Yes‹.

Have entries read aloud and select:

You can have all the entries of your voice phone book read aloud in the order of input and select a certain entry to establish a connection:

1. ›Read phone book‹.
   The dialog for reading phone book is opened.
2. ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read aloud.

Selecting an entry

The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
   The dialog for selecting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

CarManuals2.com

Redialing

The ›Redial‹ command opens "Redial".

Notes

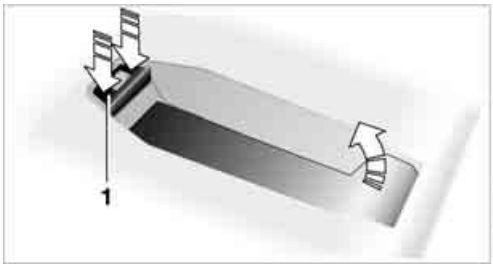
Important for voice commands

For voice commands, keep the following in mind:

- Issue the commands smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass sunroof closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

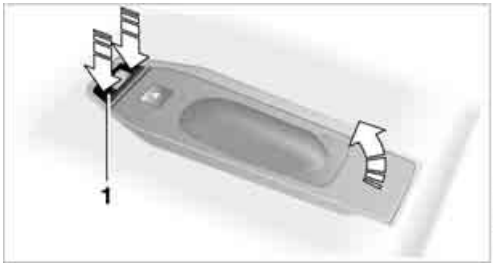
Snap-in adapter inserting/ removing*

1. Press the area **1** around the button and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front and press down until it engages.

To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press the area **1** around the button.

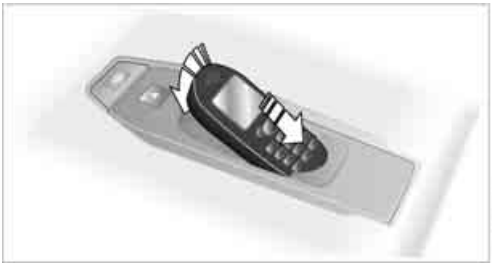


Inserting mobile phone

1. Remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector if necessary, so

that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.

2. Push the mobile phone with the buttons facing upward toward the electrical connections and press down until it engages.



The mobile phone's battery is charged from radio readiness or with the steering unlocked.

▷ To protect the vehicle's batteries, avoid using the phone when the ignition is switched off.◀

Removing mobile phone

CarManuals2.com

Press button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist provides you with various services. For example, the position data of your vehicle can be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center if an emergency request* has been initiated.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without you having to visit a BMW center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist service will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Requirements

You can use BMW Assist when the following requirements are met:

- ▷ The installed BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- ▷ To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- ▷ In order to activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- ▷ You have subscribed to BMW Assist with your BMW center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. Activation must be completed.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated, refer to page 206.

Offered services

The following services are available via BMW Assist:

- ▷ Emergency request, refer to page 235:
  When you press the SOS button, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center. The BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Automatic collision notification:
  Under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center immediately after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Enhanced roadside assistance:
  You can call Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group should you require help in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle data and position data are transmitted during this time.
- ▷ BMW Customer Relations:
  For information related to your vehicle, call BMW Customer Relations.
- ▷ BMW TeleServices*:
  The data on the service status of your vehicle or on required inspections are transmitted to your BMW center either automatically prior to the due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- ▷ Remote door unlock:
  Inform the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. if your remote control is not available and you want to have the vehicle unlocked.
- ▷ Stolen vehicle recovery:
  After your vehicle has been reported to the police as stolen, the BMW Assist Response Center can locate its position.

In addition, you can be provided with other services, e.g. the concierge service or information on route planning, traffic conditions, and the weather. With Critical Calling, you can make a limited number of calls via the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. if you do not have your mobile phone with you.

Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center, see below.

You also have access to the BMW Assist concierge service via the Internet.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Characteristics of the offered services

The following characteristics apply to the services:

- ▷ The offered services are country-specific.
- ▷ Voice contact is established or data are transmitted, depending on the equipment and the country. In some countries, it is possible to do both.
- ▷ The data transmitted can, for example, be the vehicle data, your current position or the CBS Condition Based Service data.

Using services

Contacting BMW Assist Response Center

You can contact the BMW Assist Response Center via the SOS button.

1. Briefly press protective cover to open.
   With some vehicle equipment packages or in the Convertible, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the button for at least 2 seconds.

The BMW Assist Response Center is contacted.

Roadside assistance

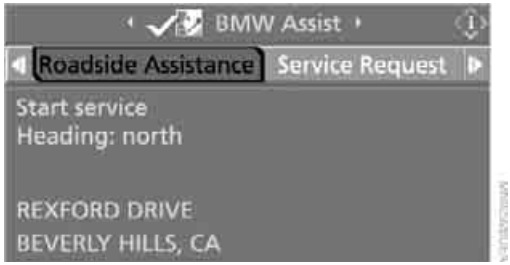
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

4. Select "Roadside Assistance" and press the controller.



   If the location can be determined, the current vehicle position is displayed.
5. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you to the Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

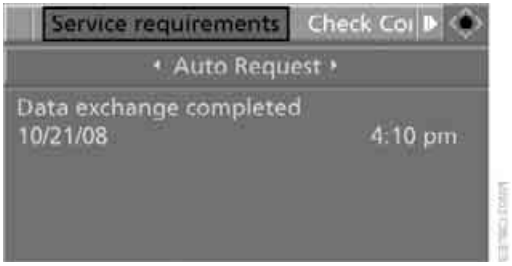
BMW TeleServices*

Automatic service notification*

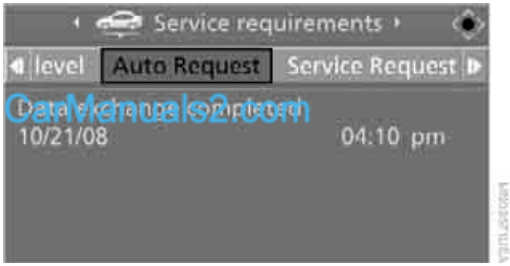
The data on the service status of your vehicle or on required inspections are transmitted automatically prior to the due date. You can check when the BMW center was notified.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.

4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



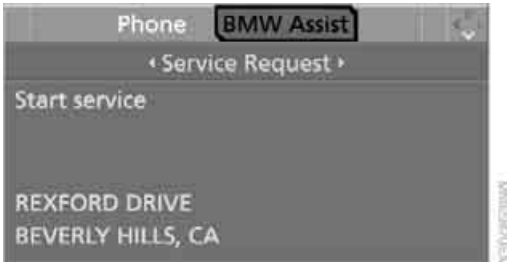
6. Select "Auto Request" and press the controller.



Manual service notification

You can transmit data regarding your vehicle's service status to your BMW center when you wish to arrange a service appointment.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Service Request" and press the controller.

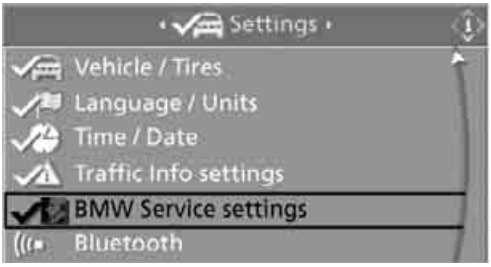
5. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The data relevant for service are transmitted. Your BMW center will contact you to set up an appointment for service.

Displaying and updating BMW TeleServices services*

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Service settings" and press the controller.



5. Select "Enabled TeleServices" and press the controller.

The enabled BMW TeleServices are displayed.

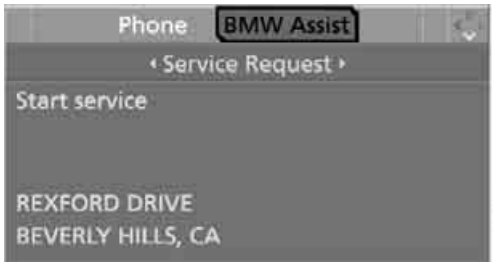
6. Select "Options" and press the controller.
7. Select "Update services" and press the controller.

Contacting BMW Customer Relations

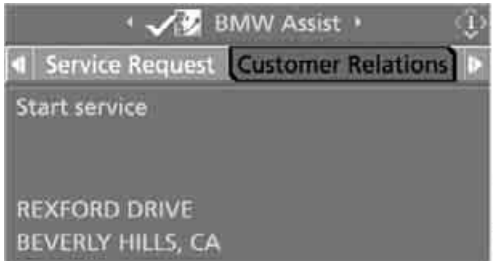
For information on all aspects of your vehicle, you can contact BMW Customer Relations.

CarManuals2.com

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Customer Relations".



5. Press the controller.
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

You will be connected to BMW Customer Relations by the BMW Assist Response Center.

Concierge service*

When you call the concierge service of BMW Assist, you can, for example, obtain information on current events, filling stations or hotels and have their phone numbers and addresses transmitted. Many hotels can be booked

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

directly through the BMW Assist concierge service.

The concierge service must be enabled separately by the BMW Assist Response Center.

Calling up information

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "Concierge" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

5. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you with a BMW Assist concierge.

Displaying transmitted data

Select the received message if necessary and press the controller.

Dialing a phone number or transferring an address for destination guidance

1. Select "Options" and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item:

▷ Press "Call" to make a telephone call. A prerequisite for this is that your Bluetooth mobile phone has been paired with the vehicle.

▷ Press "Select as destination" to transfer the address to the navigation system for destination guidance.

Updating BMW Assist

Displaying and updating services

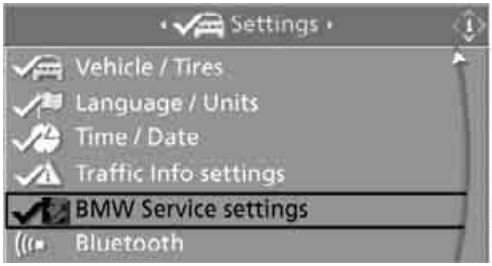
You will be notified of any changes in the services offered by BMW Assist. In this case you should update the service functions.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

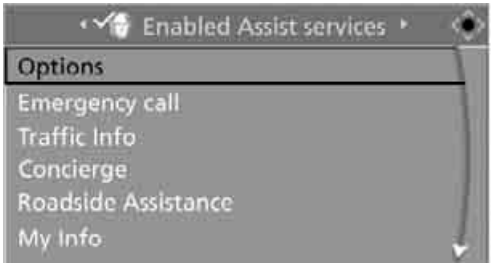
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Enabled Assist services" is selected and press the controller.
The currently available BMW Assist services are displayed.

6. If applicable, select "Options" and press the controller.



7. Select "Update services" and press the controller.

Activating BMW Assist

BMW Assist must be activated to use the services.

Requirements

▷ Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.

▷ Leave the ignition switched on during the activation process.

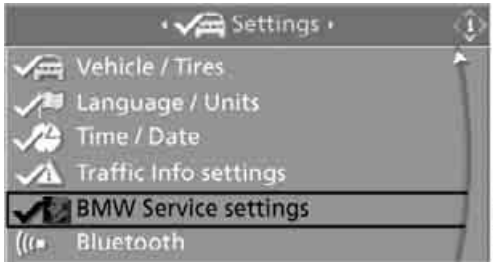
Activating

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.

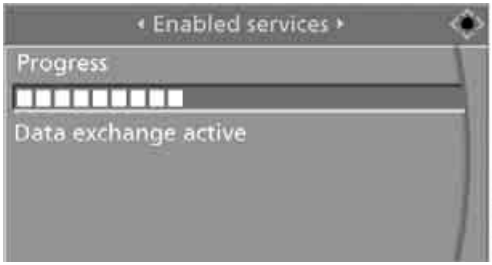


CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Enabled Assist services" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Enable services" and press the controller.
BMW Assist is enabled and the data exchange with the BMW Assist Response Center begins.



Activation takes a few minutes. The status is displayed on the Control Display. If you open another menu, the activation process continues to run in the background.

Displaying vehicle data

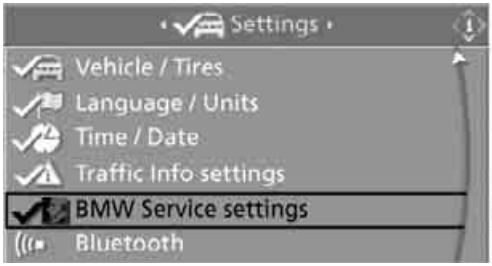
With BMW Assist activated, you can have the Telematics ID displayed. The Telematics ID is used to identify your vehicle. These data are transmitted to the service.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Service settings" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Profile" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Mobility

This section helps you maintain your car's mobility by supplying important information on vital topics, including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and breakdown assistance.

CarManuals2.com

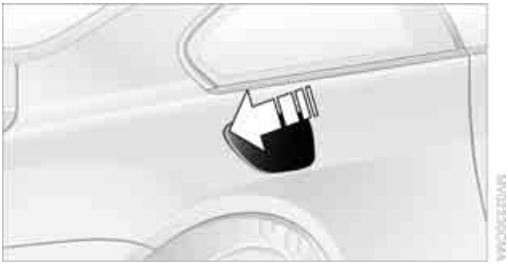
Refueling

Switch off the engine before refueling, otherwise no fuel can be filled into the tank and a message is displayed.◀

When handling fuel, always observe all applicable precautionary measures and regulations. Never transport reserve fuel containers in the vehicle. They can leak and cause an explosion or a fire in an accident.◀

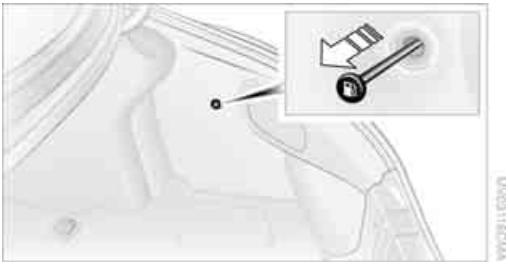
CarManuals2.com

Fuel filler door



To open and close: briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

Unlocking manually



In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can release the fuel filler door manually:

In the luggage compartment, pull the knob with the gas pump symbol on the right side panel.

Observe the following when refueling

When handling fuels, follow the safety precautions posted at the filling station. Otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury and property damage.◀

Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler door.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid raising the filler nozzle during refueling, otherwise this

- results in premature pump shutoff
- can lead to reduced efficiency in the fuel-vapor recovery system

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 18.5 US gal/70 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx. 2.6 US gal/10 liters.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Fuel filler cap

Closing

Insert the cap and turn it clockwise until there is a clearly audible click.

Do not crush the band attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap may not properly seal and fuel vapors can escape.◀

A message* is displayed if the cap is loose or missing.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Fuel specifications

Never used leaded gasoline; it will permanently damage the catalytic converter. Do not use E85, i.e. fuel that consists of 85% ethanol, or Flex Fuel. Otherwise permanent damage to the engine and the fuel supply system will result.◀

CarManuals2.com

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91

This gasoline is highly recommended.

However, you may also use gasoline with less AKI. The minimum AKI rating is 87.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no affect on the engine life.

Do not use gasoline below the specified minimum quality, otherwise engine damage can result.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has demonstrated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10% ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8% oxygen by weight, that is, 15% MTBE or 3% methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in problems relating to drivability and starting, and to a tendency to stall, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter drivability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.
Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure

Information for your safety

The condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure are crucial not only to the tire's service life, but also to driving comfort and most importantly, driving safety.

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure increases.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it as needed: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. Otherwise, driving instability or tire damage, and therefore accidents, can result from incorrect tire inflation pressures.◀

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 91, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 93.◀

Pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes and tire brands respectively approved and recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressure for your tires, observe the following:

- Tire sizes for your vehicle
- Load conditions
- Maximum allowable driving speed

CarManuals2.com

Tire inflation pressures for driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the column for traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph/160 km/h to achieve optimum driving comfort.

These pressure specifications can be found on the door post when you open the driver's door.

The maximum permissible speed for these tire pressures is 100 mph/160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed, otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Tire inflation pressures for driving above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please note the tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h listed in the relevant column of the table on the following pages and adjust your tire inflation pressures as needed. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits, otherwise violations of the law could occur.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Tire inflation pressures for 650i Coupe

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 18 96 V M+S 245/50 R 17 99 H M+S	32/220	33/230	32/220	33/230	33/230	39/270
Front: 245/45 R 18 96 W Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 W	32/220	33/230	32/220	33/230	33/230	39/270
Front: 245/40 R 19 94 W Rear: 275/35 R 19 96 W	32/220	33/230	32/220	33/230	33/230	39/270
Front: 245/35 R 20 91 W Rear: 275/30 R 20 93 Y	32/220	33/230	32/220	33/230	33/230	39/270

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 245.

Tire inflation pressures for 650i Convertible

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 18 96 V M+S 245/50 R 17 99 H M+S	32/220	38/260	32/220	38/260	39/270	46/320
Front: 245/45 R 18 96 W Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 W	32/220	38/260	32/220	38/260	39/270	46/320
Front: 245/40 R 19 94 W Rear: 275/35 R 19 96 W	32/220	38/260	32/220	38/260	39/270	46/320
Front: 245/35 R 20 91 W Rear: 275/30 R 20 93 Y	32/220	39/270	32/220	38/260	39/270	46/320

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 245.

CarManuals2.com

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

e.g. 245/45 R 18 96 W

Nominal width in mm
Aspect ratio in %
Radial belt construction
Rim diameter in inches
Load rating
(not on ZR tires)
Speed code letter
(in front of the R on ZR tires)

Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the US Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

e.g. DOT xxxx xxx 1008

Manufacturer code
for tire make
Tire size and tire design
Tire age

Tire age

The tire's date of manufacture is indicated on the sidewall:
DOT ... 1008 indicates that the tire was manufactured in week 10 of 2008.

BMW recommends replacing all tires at least every 6 years, even if some tires may last for 10 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.
For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 ½, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

CarManuals2.com

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC – run-flat tires

You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 218.

M+S

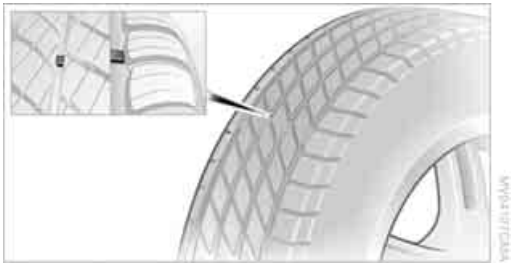
Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 0.12 in/3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 0.12 in/3 mm, there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.
Winter tires noticeably loose their suitability for winter use below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm. For the sake of safety, new tires should be installed.



Wear indicators at the tread-groove base, refer to arrow, are distributed over the tire's circumference and are marked on the side of the tire with TWI – Tread Wear Indicator. If the tire tread has been driven down to the wear indicators, a tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm has been reached.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazards and consequential damages.
Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. These kinds of problems may also be signaled by other changes in vehicle response, such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there. Otherwise, tire damage can be extremely dangerous to vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

CarManuals2.com

Run-flat tires

CarManuals2.com

You will recognize run-flat tires by the circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire.
Run-flat tires consist of partially self-contained tires and special rims. The sidewall reinforcement ensures that the tire retains some residual safety in the event of pressure drop and driving remains possible to a restricted degree.

To continue driving with a damaged tire:

- ▷ With Flat Tire Monitor, refer to Indication of a flat tire, page 92
- ▷ With Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to Message with low tire inflation pressure, page 93

New wheels and tires

Only have new wheels and tires mounted by a BMW center or a repair shop that works in accordance with BMW guidelines and uses appropriately trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

BMW does not recommend that you use retreaded tires, as driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include the possibly different tire casing structures and the often wide variations in their age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

The right wheels and tires

BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions than the approved units – these differences could lead to body contact, and with it the risk of severe accidents. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot be held liable for driving safety.◀

You can inquire about the right wheel/tire combination at your BMW center.

The right wheel-and-tire combination is another vital factor in ensuring reliable operation of various vehicle systems such as ABS and DSC.

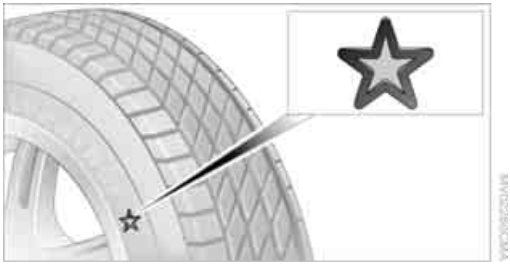
To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Wheels with electronics for TPM Tire Pressure Monitor

When mounting new tires or converting from summer to winter tires or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise the Tire Pressure Monitor cannot detect a flat tire, refer to page 92. Your BMW center will be happy to advise you on this subject.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Recommended tire brands



Certain tire makes are recommended by BMW depending on the tire size. You can recognize these from the clearly visible BMW marking on the tire sidewall.

When used properly, these tires comply with the most demanding standards for safety and vehicle response.

Run-flat tires

When mounting new tires, or changing from summer to winter tires or vice versa, use run-flat tires for your own safety. In addition, no spare tire is available in case of a flat tire. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for use in cold winter driving conditions. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Watch speed

Always observe the maximum permissible speed for the winter tires, otherwise tire damage may occur, which can result in accidents.◀

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels. Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Rotating wheels between axles

BMW does not recommend moving the front wheels to the rear or vice versa, as otherwise the handling characteristics may be impaired. With tires of different makes and types* such a change is not permissible.

CarManuals2.com

Snow chains*

BMW only tests certain fine-link snow chains, classifies them as road-safe and recommends them. Consult your BMW center for more information.

These snow chains are approved exclusively for use in pairs on the rear wheels with the tire size:

- ▷ 245/50 R 17
- ▷ 245/45 R 18

Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h with the chains mounted.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after installing snow chains as this could cause the Flat Tire Monitor to malfunction.
When driving with snow chains, it may be practical to briefly activate DTC, refer to page 89.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Under the hood

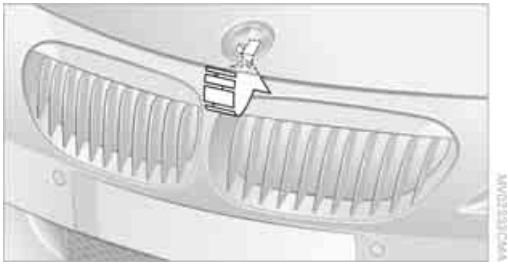
Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the required professional technical training.
If you do not know what repair procedures to follow, have work on your vehicle done only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Hood

Releasing

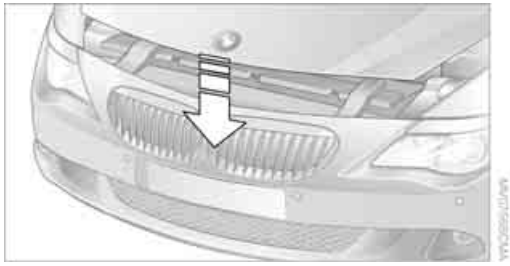
Pull lever.

Opening



Press the release handle and open the hood. Do not open the hood until the engine has cooled down.

Closing



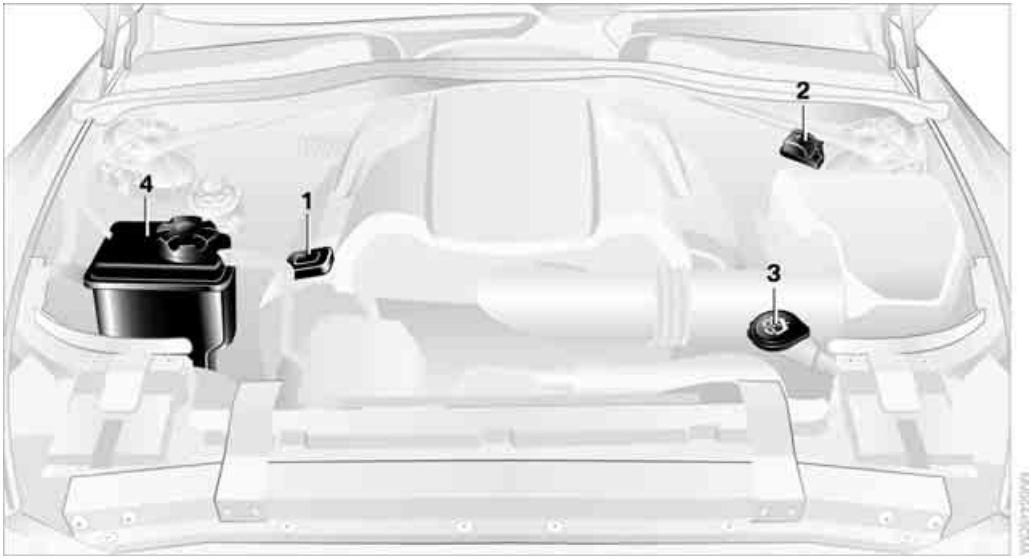
Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.
If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving your vehicle, you should stop at once and close it securely.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Engine compartment



1 Filler spout for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil

2 Starting-aid terminal, refer to page 236

3 Filler neck for washer fluid of the headlamp and windshield cleaning systems, refer to page 67

4 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 223

CarManuals2.com

Engine oil

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

Checking engine oil level

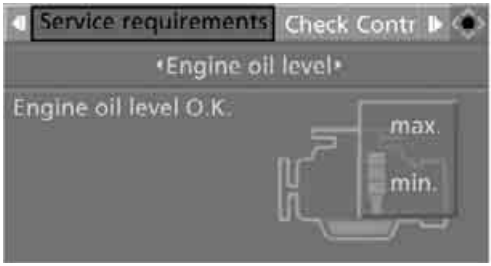
Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic oil level check.

The condition for the most accurate indication of the oil level possible is measurement with the engine at operating temperature, i.e. following an uninterrupted drive of at least 6 miles/10 km. You can display the oil level on the Control Display while driving or when stopped on a level surface with the engine running.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Info sources" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Service Info" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



6. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until "Engine oil level" is selected and press the controller. The oil level is displayed.

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level O.K."

▷ "No measurement available: Updating engine oil level measurement...":
The engine oil level is measured. This process can take approx. 1 minute when stopped on a level surface with the engine running and approx. 5 minutes while driving.
If the engine oil has been topped off, the measurement of the oil level can take up to 30 minutes.

▷ "Oil level at the minimum! Refill with 1 quart of engine oil.":
Add a maximum of 1 US quart/liter of engine oil at the next opportunity, refer also to Adding engine oil below. Add at least 0.5 US quart/liter of oil; otherwise, the oil level check cannot reliably display the new oil level.
If the oil level displayed is below minimum, add engine oil immediately. Failure to do so may lead to engine damage.

▷ "Engine oil level too high":

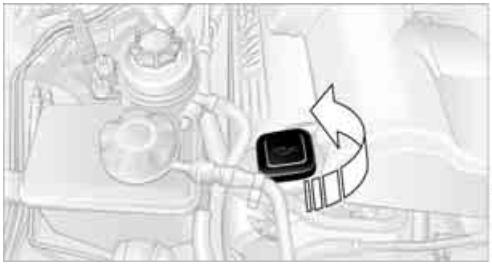
⚠ Have the vehicle checked immediately, otherwise engine damage may result if too much oil has been added.◀

▷ "Please observe recalculated service interval for engine oil":
Do not add engine oil. Before continuing to drive, note the recalculated remaining mileage until the next oil change service, refer to Service requirements on page 79. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Adding engine oil



Do not add 1 US quart/liter of oil until a corresponding message is shown on the Control Display.

Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km, otherwise the engine could be damaged.◀

Continuous exposure to used oil has caused cancer in laboratory testing. For this reason, thoroughly wash exposed areas of skin with soap and water after such work. Keep oil, grease etc. out of reach of children and observe the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks.◀

Oil change

CarManuals2.com

Have oil changed only at your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Approved engine oils

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW continuously approves specific oils after confirming their suitability for use in its vehicles with extensive testing.

Only use approved BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil.

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is unavailable, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils between oil changes. Only use oils of the specification API SM or higher.

Your BMW center will be happy to answer detailed questions on BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils.◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website at www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Do not use oil additives; under some circumstances, they can damage your engine.◀

Viscosity grades

Viscosity is a measure of an oil's flow rating and is specified in SAE grades.

The choice of the right SAE grade is based on the climatic conditions in the region in which you normally drive your BMW.

Approved oils belong to the 0W-40, 0W-30, 5W-40 and 5W-30 SAE grades.◀

These oils can be used at all temperatures.

BMW recommends Castrol

Coolant

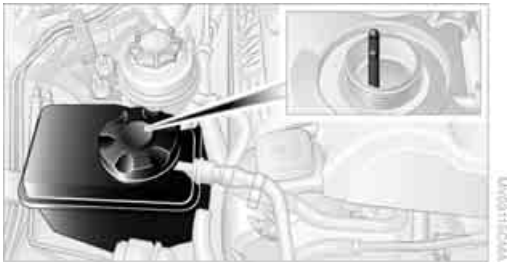
Do not open the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

Coolant is composed of equal parts water and a coolant additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center for suitable additives.

Only use suitable additives, otherwise engine damage may result. The additives present a health hazard.◀

Always observe all applicable environmental laws and regulations when disposing of used coolant additives.◀

Checking coolant level



1. Do not open the hood until the engine has cooled down.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct when the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks, refer to the diagram adjacent to the filler neck.
4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level – do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until it clicks.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Maintenance

BMW Maintenance System

The BMW maintenance system supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The service schedule also includes operations related to the vehicle's comfort and convenience features, such as replacement of the filters for the inside air. The ultimate objective is to ensure economical maintenance by providing the ideal service for your vehicle.

Should the day come when you decide to sell your BMW, a complete dealer service history will prove to be an asset of inestimable value.

CBS Condition Based Service

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

You can set the Control Display to show remaining distances and times of selected maintenance intervals and legally mandated deadlines, refer to page 79:

- ▷ Engine oil
- ▷ Brake pads, front and rear separately
- ▷ Brake fluid
- ▷ Vehicle check
- ▷ Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations

Service data in remote control

Your vehicle stores the information required maintenance continuously in the remote control during driving. After accessing the data stored in the remote control, your BMW Service Advisor can suggest precisely the right array of service procedures for your own individual vehicle. You should therefore hand over the remote control you last used to drive to the BMW Service Advisor when you take your vehicle in for service.

⚠ Make sure the date is set correctly, refer to page 85, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.◀

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

▷ BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.
Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnostics interface

Components which are decisive for the exhaust-gas composition can be checked via the OBD socket with a device.

This socket is located under a cover on the left side of the driver's footwell, directly under the instrument panel.

Exhaust-gas values

The warning lamp lights up. The exhaust-gas values worsen. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction on Canadian models.

CarManuals2.com

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This is a sign of excessive misfiring of the engine. In this case you should reduce speed and drive to the nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Heavy engine misfiring causes serious damage to the emission-relevant components, especially the catalytic converter, within a short time.

▷ If the fuel filler cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system can detect the escape of fuel vapor. Then a display lights up. If the cap is then tightened, the display will go out within a few days.◀

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring and diagnosis modules, or with a device for recording or transmitting certain vehicle data or information. If you have also subscribed to BMW Assist, certain vehicle data can be transmitted or recorded to enable corresponding services.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Care

Car-care products

Regular cleaning and care make a significant contribution to retaining your BMW's value.

For the cleaning and care of your vehicle, BMW recommends using only products that BMW has approved for this purpose.

Your BMW center will be glad to advise you about products and services for the cleaning and care of your BMW.

Genuine BMW Care Products are materials tested, laboratory tested, and tested in actual use. They offer optimum care and protection for your vehicle.◀

Do not use cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents; they can damage your vehicle.◀

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous or pose health risks. You should therefore heed the warnings and hazard indications on the packaging. Open the doors or windows on your vehicle whenever cleaning the interior. Make sure there is sufficient ventilation in enclosed spaces. Use only products that are formulated for vehicle cleaning.◀

Exterior care

Washing your vehicle

In the winter months, it is especially important to ensure that the vehicle is washed on a regular basis. Otherwise, significant soiling and road salt can cause damage to the vehicle.◀

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. Failure to do so may lead to a reduction in braking efficiency and also to corrosion of the brake rotors.◀

CarManuals2.com

Car washes

Give preference to cloth car washes.

Do not use high-pressure car washes because they can cause drops of water to penetrate in the vicinity of the windshield.◀

Before driving into the car wash, make sure that it is suitable for your BMW. Pay attention to the following points:

- Dimensions of your vehicle, refer to page 243.
- If necessary, fold in the outside rearview mirrors, refer to page 55.
- Maximum permissible tire width.
- The convertible top must not be treated with wax. Make sure that a program without wax or a special convertible program is available.

Preparations for driving into the car wash:

- Deactivate rain sensor to prevent unwanted wiper activation.
- Remove additional add-on parts, e.g. spoilers or phone antennas, if they could be damaged.

Automatic transmission

Before driving into the car wash, make sure the vehicle is able to roll by making sure to:

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock, even with comfort access.
2. Shift into transmission position N.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Switch off the engine.
5. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

Steam cleaners/high-pressure cleaning jets

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, ensure that you maintain sufficient clearance to the vehicle and do not exceed a temperature of 60 °C.
Insufficient distance or excessive pressure or temperature can damage parts of the vehicle or

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

can result in water penetration. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure cleaning jets.◀

When using high-pressure cleaning jets, do not remain in one place for a long time and be sure to maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm from sensors, e.g. Park Distance Control sensors or radar sensors.◀

Hand washing

When washing the vehicle by hand, use plenty of water and car washing shampoo. Clean the vehicle with gentle pressure using a sponge or a washing brush.

Before cleaning the windshield, deactivate the rain sensor or switch off the ignition to prevent unwanted wiper operation.◀

Follow local guidelines for washing vehicles by hand.◀

Headlamps

Do not rub dry and never use abrasives or strong solvents to clean the covers.

Loosen dirt, e.g. insects, with shampoo or insect remover and wash away with plenty of water.

Use a window de-icer to remove accumulated ice and snow, not a scraper.

Windows

Use a glass cleaner to clean the inside and outside surfaces of the windows and the glass surfaces of the mirrors.

Do not use quartz-containing cleansers to clean glass surfaces of the mirrors.◀

Wiper blades

Clean with soapy water and replace regularly to prevent streaking.

The presence of wax and sealant residues and dirt on the windows leads to streaking during wiper operation and results in premature wear on wiper blades as well as interference with the rain sensor.◀

CarManuals2.com

Convertible top care

The appearance and service life of the convertible top depend on proper care and operation.

Please follow these instructions:

- Never stow the convertible top in the convertible top compartment when it is wet or frozen, since this can cause water marks, mildew stains, and scuff marks.
- Remove water marks on the headliner with a microfiber cloth and interior cleanser.
- When parking for long intervals in enclosed spaces, make sure there is sufficient ventilation.
- Remove bird droppings immediately because their caustic properties have a corrosive effect on the convertible top and can damage the rubber seals.

Do not use stain remover, paint thinner, solvents, gasoline, or the like to remove stains. These substances can damage the rubber coating. Improper care and cleaning can cause leaks to develop in the convertible top and its seams.◀

In the event of more serious soiling, use a special convertible top cleaner.
When doing so, follow the manufacturer's directions for use.

After three to five washings, treat the convertible top with sealant.

Caring for the vehicle finish

Regular care helps your vehicle retain its value and protects the paint from the long-term effects of aggressive substances.

Regionally occurring environmental factors can affect and damage vehicle finish. It is therefore important to tailor the frequency and extent of your car care accordingly.

Immediately remove particularly aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease, brake fluid, tree resin, or bird droppings; otherwise, they may damage your paint.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Repairing paint damage

Repair stone damage or scratches immediately, depending on the severity of the damage, to prevent the formation of rust.◀

BMW recommends having paint damage professionally repaired using Genuine BMW finish materials in accordance with factory guidelines.

Waxing

Sealant is required when water no longer beads on the clean surface of the paint. Use only products that contain carnauba wax or synthetic wax to seal your finish.

Rubber gaskets

Treat only with water or a rubber care product.

To avoid noise or damage, do not use products that contain silicone to care for rubber gaskets.◀

Chrome components

Particularly after exposure to road salt, thoroughly cleanse parts like the radiator grille, door handles, or window frames with plenty of water with shampoo added to it. For additional treatment, use chrome polish.

Alloy wheels

Depending on your system, braking can generate dust, which settles on the light-alloy wheels. Remove this dust regularly with acid-free wheel cleaner.

Do not use aggressive, acid-containing, strongly alkaline, or coarse cleansers and do not use steam cleaners at temperatures greater than 60 °C; otherwise you may damage your vehicle.◀

Outside sensors

Sensors outside the vehicle, such as Park Distance Control sensors or radar sensors, should be kept clean and free of ice to maintain their full function.◀

CarManuals2.com

Interior care

Upholstery materials/cloth-covered paneling

Clean regularly with a vacuum cleaner in order to remove surface dirt.

In the event of more serious soiling such as beverage stains, use a soft sponge or a lint-free microfiber cloth in combination with suitable interior cleaners. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Clean upholstery material over a large area extending out to the seams. Avoid intense friction.◀

Open Velcro fasteners on pants or other items of clothing can cause damage to the seat covering. Make sure that the Velcro fasteners are closed.◀

Leather/leather-covered paneling

The leather used by BMW is a high quality natural product. Slight patterns in the grain are part of the typical properties of a natural leather.◀

Dust and dirt from the road chafe in pores and folds and result in considerable wear and cause the leather surface to become prematurely brittle. We therefore suggest that you clean the leather with a dust cloth or vacuum cleaner at regular intervals.

Particularly with light-colored leather, make sure to clean it regularly since it has a greater tendency to become soiled.

Treat the leather twice a year with a leather lotion since dirt and grease harm the protective layer of the leather.

Carpets/luggage compartment

Carpeting, floor mats, and luggage compartment rugs and paneling can be cleaned with a vacuum or in the event of more serious soiling, cleansed with an interior cleaner.

Floor mats and luggage compartment rugs can be removed for cleaning. When inserting into place, make sure that the seat rails do not pro-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

trude over the floor mats; otherwise floor mats can be damaged.

Fluff on new floor mats is a result of the production process and can be removed by repeated vacuuming.

Plastic components inside

Clean the glass cover of the instrument panel, imitation leather surfaces, lamp lenses, and matte components with water and, if necessary, a solvent-free plastic cleaner.

Fine wooden components

Use a damp cloth to clean fine wooden trim panels and components. Follow up by drying with a soft cloth.

Safety belts

Do not use cleansers to clean the safety belts since this can destroy the webbing.◀

Inside sensors

Clean inside sensors such as those of the high-beam assistant using a lint-free cloth moistened with glass cleaner.

Displays

Clean displays like the radio or the Control Display using a display-cleaning cloth or a soft, nonabrasive lint-free cloth.

Avoid using excessive pressure when cleaning displays; otherwise, you could damage them.◀

Never use chemical-based cleansers or household scouring products. Keep all liquids away from the equipment. Otherwise corrosion or damage to surfaces or electrical components can occur.◀

CD/DVD player

Do not use cleaning CDs; they can damage parts of the player.◀

Storing your vehicle

When storing your vehicle for longer than three months, please seek the advice of your BMW center or a workshop that works in accordance with BMW guidelines.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Replacing components

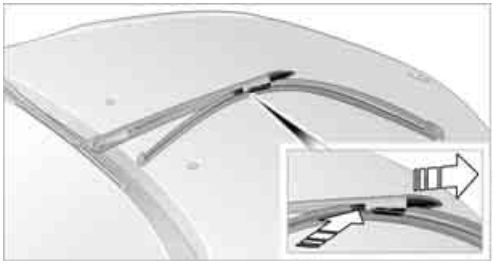
Onboard toolkit

Coupe

Convertible

The onboard tool kit is located in the luggage compartment under the floor mat.

Replacing wiper blades



1. Fold the wiper arm out and grasp firmly.
2. Press the safety tabs together while sliding the wiper blade toward the front to disengage it.
3. Mount the new wiper blade and slide in until it is heard to engage.

CarManuals2.com

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. You must be duly diligent in replacing them. If you are not familiar with the specified procedures, have the corresponding work carried out at your BMW center.

Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean cloth, napkin, etc., or hold the bulb by its metal socket.◀

A selection of replacement bulbs is available at your BMW center.

Whenever you perform any work on the electrical system, turn off the systems/consumers involved to prevent short circuits from occurring. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

For information on how to care for the headlamps, please follow the instructions on page 227.

For bulbs for which changing is not described, and for checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.◀

Light-emitting diodes LEDs

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours, as irritation of the retina could result.◀

Xenon lamps

The service life of these bulbs is very long and the probability of a failure is very low, provided that they are not switched on and off an unusual number of times. If one of these bulbs should nevertheless fail, it is possible to continue driving with great caution using the fog lamps, provided traffic laws in your area do not prohibit this.

Have work on the xenon lighting system performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is a danger of fatal injuries when work is carried out improperly.◀

Parking lamps, roadside parking lamps, daytime running lamps

The illustration shows the left-hand side of the engine compartment.

35-watt bulb, H 8

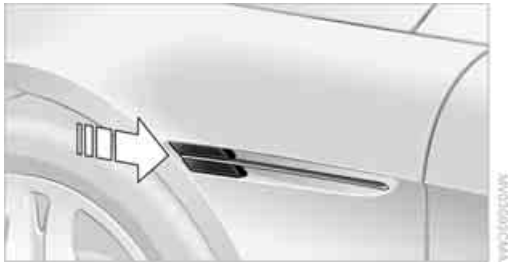
1. Remove the cover cap **1** by pressing the tab and removing the cover cap upward.
2. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.

Always wear gloves and eye protection – the atmosphere inside the H8 bulb is pressurized. Otherwise there is a danger of injuries if the bulb is accidentally damaged during replacement.◀

Side-mounted turn signals

5-watt bulb, WY5W

1. Press against the front edge of the lamp with the tip of your finger, then push it to the rear, release the snap connection at the front and take it off the trim strip.

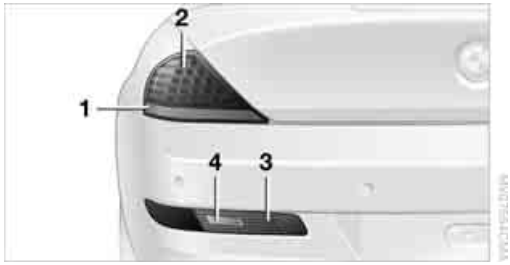


2. Turn the bulb holder to the left by 90° and remove.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.

Tail lamps

The roadside parking lamps, tail lamps, brake lamps, and turn signals use LED technology. The backup lamps are equipped with long-life bulbs. Please contact a BMW center in case of a malfunction.◀

CarManuals2.com



1 Turn signal

2 Roadside parking, tail and brake lamps

3 Reflector

4 Backup lamp

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

License plate lamps

5-watt bulb, W5W

1. Push a screwdriver from the left under the lamp and pry out the lamp toward the right.
2. Turn the bulb holder to the left by 90° and remove.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.

Changing wheels

Your BMW is equipped with run-flat tires as a standard feature. An immediate wheel change in the event of a flat tire is therefore no longer required.

To continue driving with a damaged tire:

▷ With Flat Tire Monitor, refer to Indication of a flat tire, page 92

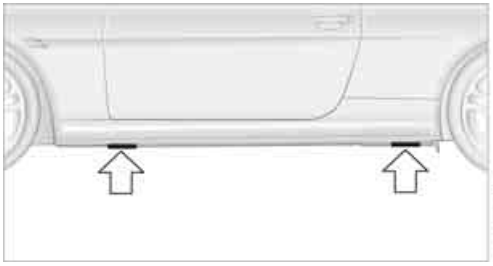
▷ With Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to Message with low tire inflation pressure, page 93

You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to Run-flat tires on page 218.

If you have new tires mounted or switch from summer to winter tires, or vice versa, use run-flat tires because no spare tire is provided in case of a flat. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.
Also refer to New wheels and tires, page 218.

The suitable tools for changing tires are available as accessories from your BMW center.◀

Car jacking points



The jacking points for the car jack are located in the positions shown.

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate.
Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Charging battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine switched off. Connections, refer to Jump starting on page 236.

Disposal

Have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or hand them in to a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always restrain the battery to prevent it from tipping over during transport.◀

Power failure

Following a temporary power failure, e.g. due to a discharged battery, the use of some equipment will be restricted, requiring its reinitialization. In the same way, individual settings are lost and must be updated again:

CarManuals2.com

- Seat, mirror and steering wheel* memory
  The positions must be stored again, refer to page 51.
- Time and date
  Must be updated again, refer to page 84.
- Radio
  Radio stations must be stored again, refer to page 166.
- Navigation system
  You must wait until the system becomes functional again, refer to page 134.
- Glass roof, electric
  It may not be possible to move the glass roof. The system must be initialized, refer to page 43.
- Active steering
  The system is deactivated and must be reinitialized, refer to page 95. Until then, larger steering wheel movements are required.
- Power windows
  The pinch prevention system for the power windows must be reinitialized, refer to page 40.

Talk to your BMW center before placing the stored vehicle back in service. ◀

Fuses

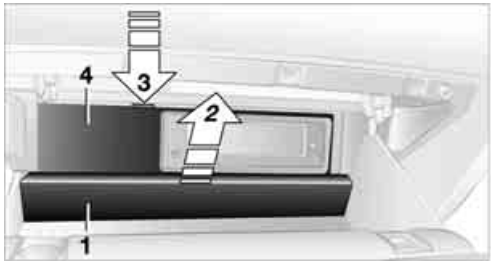
Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating, as this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle. ◀

Spare fuses and a pair of plastic tweezers are located in the compartment for the onboard tool kit, refer to page 231.

Information on fuse allocation is located below the bracket for the onboard tool kit, see below.

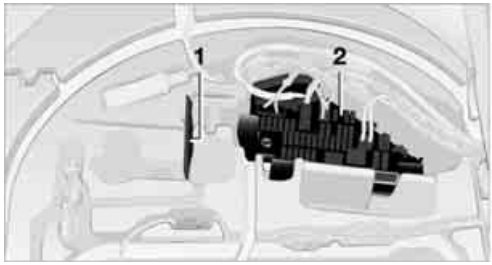
In glove compartment

1. Press the button on the back in the center of partition **1** and pull out the partition upward, arrow **2**.



2. Press the coupling downward, arrow **3**, and fold the lid **4** forward.

In cargo bay



Fold the cover under the floor mat upward and remove the bracket for the onboard tool kit. Information on fuse allocation **1** and additional fuses **2** are provided there.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency request

Conditions for an emergency request:

- ▷ Full preparation package mobile phone. With this equipment, an emergency request is still possible when no mobile phone is paired with the vehicle.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated. Activating BMW Assist, refer to page 206.
- ▷ Radio readiness is activated.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network.
- ▷ The emergency request system is operable.

Once your BMW Assist subscription expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without you having to visit a workshop. Once the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, emergency requests are not possible. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Initiating an emergency request

1. Briefly press protective cover to open. With some vehicle equipment packages or in the Convertible, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the SOS button for at least 2 seconds.

The LED in the button lights up. As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

CarManuals2.com

When the emergency request is received at the BMW Assist Response Center, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and arranges for additional steps to help you.

If conditions allow, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

If the current position of your vehicle can be determined, it will be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard over the hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. The BMW Assist Response Center may still be able to hear you, though.

Under certain conditions, an emergency request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. Pressing the button does not interfere with this.

For technical reasons, the emergency request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

▷ You can also use other services of BMW Assist with this button, refer to page 201.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Warning triangle*

The warning triangle is located on the left-hand side in the luggage compartment.

First-aid kit*

The first-aid kit is located in the filler element of the rear seat backrest.

1. Press the button downward and pull the filler element forward.

2. Take out first-aid kit.

To refit the filler element, insert the two bottom tabs into the strip and press the filler element back into place. Make sure that you do not damage the rear seat upholstery.◀

CarManuals2.com

Some of the articles contained in the first-aid kit have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace the contents concerned in good time if necessary.

Roadside Assistance*

The Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group offers you assistance in the event of a breakdown around the clock, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of the Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the Contact brochure.

With BMW Assist you can contact the Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group for assistance in the event of a breakdown directly via iDrive, refer to page 202.

Jump starting

When your battery is discharged, you can use two jumper cables to start your BMW with power from the battery in a second vehicle. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Use only jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 Volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical systems and components in both vehicles.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles, otherwise there is a danger of shorting.◀

Connecting jumper cables

To avoid personal injury from sparks, follow this sequence when connecting jumper cables.◀

In your BMW, the so-called jump-starting terminal for jump starting in the engine compartment serves as a positive terminal for the battery, also refer to engine compartment overview on page 221. The cover cap is marked with a +.

1. Fold open the cover of the BMW jump-starting terminal. To do so, pull the tab.

2. Attach one end of the jumper cable plus/+ to the positive terminal of the battery or a jump-starting terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery or to a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one end of the jumper cable minus/– to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.
   Your BMW has a special nut as body ground or negative terminal.

5. Attach the second end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting engine

1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and allow it to run at idle for several minutes at slightly increased speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the connection sequence.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting and towing

CarManuals2.com

Observe applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing.◀

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

Using tow fitting

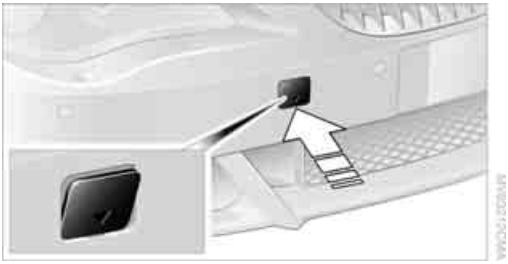
The threaded tow fitting is stored in the tool kit mounted on the inside of the luggage compartment under the floor mat, refer to page 231, and should always remain in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

Only use the tow fitting that comes with the vehicle and screw it in as far as possible. Use the tow fitting for towing only on roads. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.◀

Access to screw thread

Press the arrow symbol on the cover in the bumper.

Front



Rear

Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 60, otherwise the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals and windshield wipers would not be available. Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle raised, as otherwise the steering can turn to the left or right.When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. This then requires increased effort for braking and steering. Active steering is deactivated and larger steering wheel movements are required.◀

Switch on the hazard warning flashers depending on the local regulations. If the electrical system fails, mark the vehicle to be towed, e.g. with a sign or warning triangle in the rear window.

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Sport automatic transmission

Before towing, manually release the transmission lock, even if there is no malfunction in the transmission. Otherwise there is a risk that the transmission lock will engage during towing.◀

Manually unlocking and locking transmission lock, refer to page 64.

Do not exceed a towing speed of 45 mph/70 km/h and a towing distance of 90 miles/150 km; otherwise, the sport automatic transmission may be damaged.◀

Towing methods

Do not lift vehicle by tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◀

In some countries, towing with tow bars or ropes in public traffic is not permitted. Familiarize yourself with the regulations on towing in the respective country.

With tow bar

The towing vehicle may not be lighter than the vehicle to be towed, otherwise it will not be possible to reliably control vehicle response.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.
- ▷ When mounted at an angle, the tow bar will exert lateral forces, tending to push the vehicle sideways.

Only attach the tow bar to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

With tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

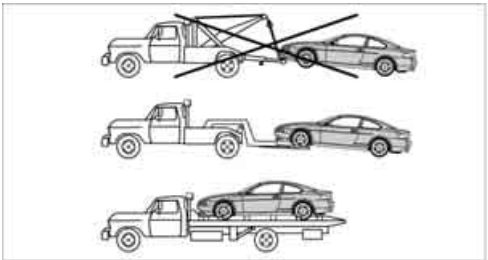
To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Only attach tow ropes to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

With tow truck



Have the BMW transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle if possible, but instead start the engine by means of jump starting, refer to page 236. Vehicles equipped with a catalytic converter should only be tow-started when the engine is cold. When equipped with a sport automatic transmission, the engine cannot be started by tow-starting.

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 60.
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Tow-start with the clutch completely depressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch again completely.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Reference

This chapter contains the technical data, the short commands of the voice command system, and the index that will direct you as quickly as possible to the information you are looking for.

Technical data

Engine data

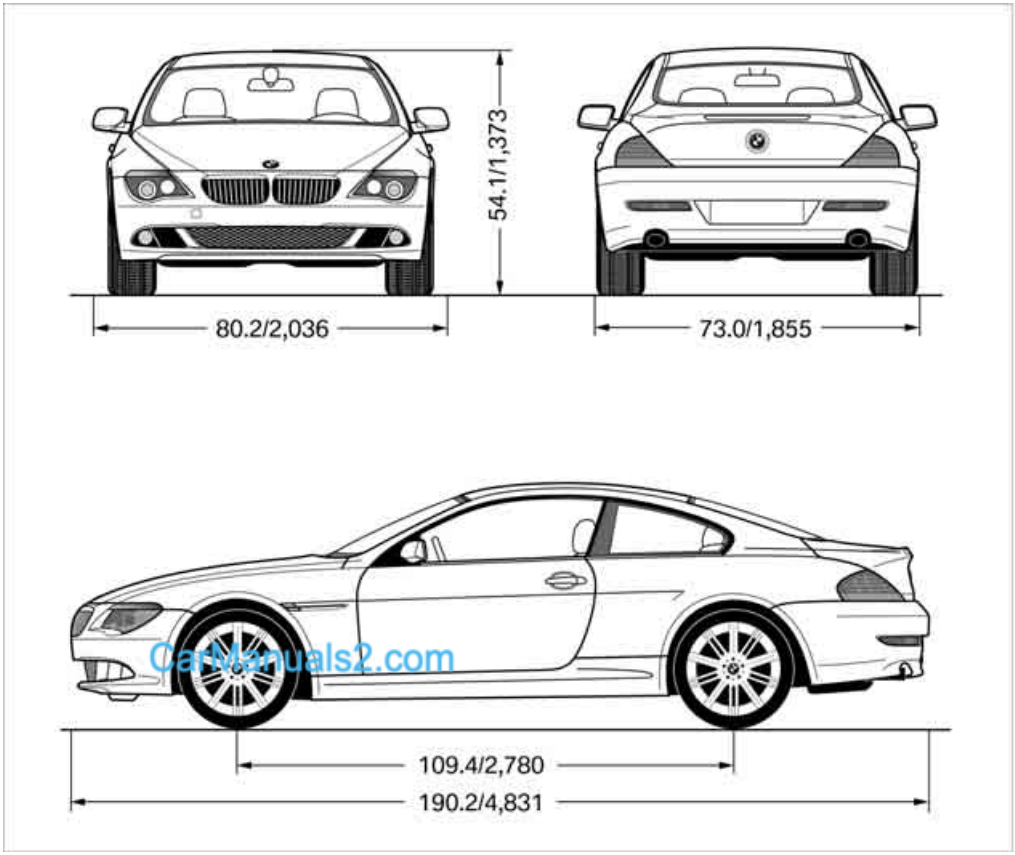
CarManuals2.com

		650i
Displacement	cu in/cm³	292.8/4,799
No. of cylinders		8
Maximum output	hp	360
at engine speed	rpm	6,300
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	360/488
at engine speed	rpm	3,400

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Dimensions

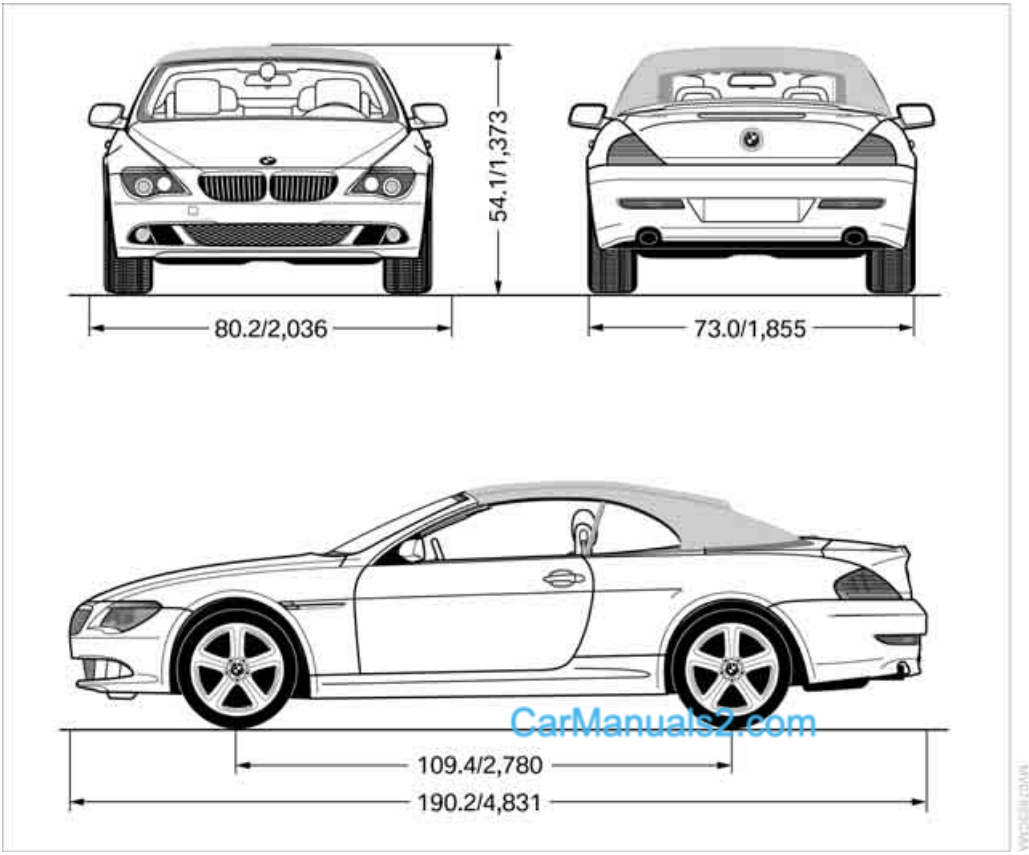
Coupe



All dimensions given in inches/mm. Smallest turning circle diam.: 37.4 ft/11.4 m

CarManuals2.com

Convertible



All dimensions given in inches/mm. Smallest turning circle diam.: 37.4 ft/11.4 m

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Weights

		650i Coupe	650i Convertible
Curb weight	lbs./kg	3,814/1,730	4,277/1,940
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs./kg	4,652/2,110	5,049/2,290
Load	lbs./kg	838/380	772/350
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,337/1,060	2,403/1,090
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,491/1,130	2,778/1,260
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	15.9/450	10.6/300
▷ with raised convertible top compartment floor, refer to page 37	cu ft/l	–	12.4/350

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 18.5/70	Fuel grade: page 213
including reserve of:	US gal/liters	approx. 2.6/10	
Window and headlamp washer system	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5	For more details: page 67

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Short commands of voice command system*

With short commands you can run certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected. Here are the important short commands for the voice command system.

Assistance window

Function	Command
To open the assistance window 21	›Assistance window‹
To select the display in the assistance window 21	›Assistance window map facing north‹, ›Assistance window map direction of travel‹, ›Assistance window arrow display‹, ›Assistance window perspective‹, ›Assistance window current position‹, ›Assistance window trip computer‹ or ›Assistance window onboard info‹
To change scale in assistance window 134	›Assistance window scale ... feet‹ or ›Assistance window scale ... miles‹

Communication

Function	Command
To open phone 193	›Phone‹
To dial phone number 193	›Dial number‹
To display phone book 194	›A to Z‹
To select from the phone book 194	›Call ...‹ or ›Dial name‹
To display "Top 8" 195	›Top 8‹
To redial 195	›Redial‹
To display "Received calls" 195	›Received calls‹
To display "Missed calls" 195	›Missed calls‹
To display "Bluetooth" 187	›Bluetooth‹
To open BMW Service, Services 201	›BMW service‹

Navigation

Function	Command
To open navigation system 134	›Navigation‹
To open "Enter address" 136	›Enter address‹
To open "New destination" 136	›New destination‹
To display "Input map" 141	›Input map‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Function	Command
To display destination list 143	›Destination list‹
To display address book 144	›Address book‹
To display route criteria 146	›Route preference‹
To start destination guidance 148	›Start guidance‹
To end destination guidance 148	›Stop guidance‹
To display arrow display 134	›Arrow display‹
To display map display 150	›Map‹, ›Map facing north‹, ›Map direction of travel‹ or ›Perspective‹
To change scale 150	›Scale ... miles‹ or ›Scale ... feet‹
To display roads or towns/cities along route 151	›Route list‹
To switch on voice instructions 151	›Navigation info on‹
To switch off voice instructions 151	›Navigation info off‹
To repeat voice instructions 152	›Repeat navigation info‹
To open route 149	›Route menu‹
To open "New route" 152	›New route‹
To display current position 155	›Current position‹

Onboard info

CarManuals2.com

Function	Command
To open "Car Data" 78	›Car data‹
To display computer 78	›Onboard info‹
To display trip computer 78	›Trip computer‹
To open stopwatch 83	›Stopwatch‹
To open speed limit 83	›Limit‹
To activate speed limit 83	›Limit on‹
To deactivate speed limit 83	›Limit off‹

Entertainment

Function	Command
Tone control 161	›Audio‹
To switch on radio 164	›Radio on‹, ›FM‹ or ›AM‹
To open "FM" 164	›FM menu‹
To open "AM" 164	›AM menu‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Function	Command
To open "All stations" 164	›FM all stations‹
To select radio station 164	›Station ...‹, e.g. ›Station WNYC‹, or ›Choose station‹
To open "Presets" 164	›FM presets‹ or ›AM presets‹
To select preset radio station 164	›Preset ...‹, e.g. ›Preset 1‹
To open "Manual" 165	›FM manual‹, ›AM manual‹ or ›Choose frequency‹, ›Frequency ... Megahertz‹
To open strongest radio stations 166	›AM Autostore‹
To open "WB" 168	›Weatherband menu‹
To switch on weatherband 168	›Weatherband on‹
To select a weatherband station 168	›Choose weatherband station‹
To open "SAT" 171	›SAT radio menu‹
To switch on satellite radio 171	›SAT radio‹
To open "Presets" of the satellite radio 172	›SAT radio presets‹
To open "All channels" of the satellite radio 171	›SAT radio all channels‹
To open "Categories" of the satellite radio 171	›SAT radio categories‹
To open CD player 174	›CD menu‹
To switch on CD player 174	›CD‹
To open CD changer 174	›CD changer menu‹
To switch on CD changer 174	›CD changer‹
To select a CD in the CD changer 174	›CD 1...6‹
To select music track 175	›CD track ...‹
To select a CD and music track in the CD changer 175	›CD 1...6 track ...‹
To switch on audio playback with external audio device 180	›Audio Aux‹

CarManuals2.com

Climate

Function	Command
To open "Vent settings" 112	›Vent settings‹
To open "Automatic programs" 111	›Automatic programs‹
To open "Parked car ventilation" 115	›Parked car operation‹
To open "Automatic ventilation" 115	›Automatic ventilation‹
To display activation times 115	›Activation time‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

i menu

Function	Command
To open the i menu	›Settings menu‹
"Display off" 22	›Display off‹
To open "Info sources"	›Info sources‹
To open "Settings"	›Settings‹
To open "Door locks" 32, 34	›Door locks‹
To open "Steering wheel buttons" 57	›Steering wheel buttons‹
To open "Lighting" 66, 105	›Lighting‹
To open "Service requirements", 203 79	›Service requirements‹
To open "Service" 79, 203	›Service‹
To open "BMW Service settings" settings 205	›BMW service settings‹
To display "Check Control messages" 81	›Check Control messages‹
To open "Head-Up Display" 99	›Head-Up Display‹
To set brightness of Control Display 85	›Brightness‹
To open "Units" 86	›Units‹
To open "Language" 86, 134	›Language‹
To open "Time" 84	›Time‹
To open "Date" 85	›Date‹
To open "PDC" 87	›PDC‹
To open "FTM" 91	›FTM‹
To open "TPM" 93	›TPM‹
To display "Bluetooth" 187	›Bluetooth‹
To activate BMW Night Vision 101	›Night Vision on‹
To deactivate BMW Night Vision 101	›Night Vision off‹
To display settings for BMW Night Vision 102	›Night Vision settings‹

CarManuals2.com

Everything from A to Z

Index

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions and refers you to the page where these texts can be found.

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 88
– indicator lamp 90
ACC, refer to Active cruise control 68
Accepted calls 194
Accessories 6
Accident, refer to Emergency request 235
Activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 114
"Activation time" for parked car ventilation 115
Active cruise control 68
– indicator lamp 72
– radar sensor 72
– selecting distance 70
– warning lamps 72
Active front head restraints 52
Active steering 95
– warning lamp 95
Adapter for spare key 30
Adaptive brake assistant 89
Adaptive brake lamps, refer to Brake force display 95
Adaptive Head Light 106
"Add digits" in mobile phone mode 194
Additives
– coolant 223
– engine oil, refer to Approved engine oils 223
"Address book" in navigation 144
Address for navigation
– deleting 145
– entering 136, 139
– selecting 145
– storing 144
– storing current position 144
"Add to address book" 144
"Add to destination list" 139, 141
Adjusting interior temperature 111
Adjusting the tone during audio operation, refer to Tone control 161
Adjusting thigh support 50
"After door opened" 52
"After unlocking" 52
Airbags 95
– deactivating, refer to Exception for front passenger seat 58
– indicator/warning lamp 97
– indicator lamp for front passenger airbags 97
– sitting safely 49
Air distribution
– automatic 111
– manual 112
Airing, refer to Ventilation 114
Air outlets, refer to Ventilation 114
Air recirculation, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 113
"Air recirculation on / off" 57
Air supply, automatic climate control 110
Air volume 112
AKI, refer to Fuel specifications 213
Alarm system 37
– avoiding unintentional alarms 38
– interior motion sensor 38
– switching off alarm 37
– switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor 38
– tilt alarm sensor 38
"All channels" 172
"All doors" 32
Alloy wheels 229
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 219
"All stations", requesting in radio mode 164
Alterations, technical, refer to For your own safety 6
Altering stretch of road 152
"AM" waveband 160, 164
Antenna for mobile phone 186
Antifreeze
– coolant 223
– washer fluid 67
Antilock Brake System ABS 88
Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 37
Anti-theft system, refer to Central locking system 31
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 245
Approved engine oils 223
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 245
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 119
Around the center console 14
Around the steering wheel 10
Arrival time
– refer to Computer 78
– refer to Starting destination guidance 148

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

"Arrow display" in navigation 149
"Arrow display pop-up instructions" 135
Ashtray 121
Assist, refer to BMW Assist 201
Assistance systems, refer to Driving stability control systems 88
Assistance window 21
"Assist. window off" 22
AUC
– Automatic recirculated-air control 113
AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 113
"Audio" 161, 163, 168
Audio 160
– controls 160
– switching on/off 160
– tone control 161
– volume 161
Audio device, external 119
Automatic
– air distribution 111
– air volume 111
– cruise control 67, 68
– headlamp control 104
– service notification 203
– steering wheel adjustment 51
– storing stations 166
Automatic car washes 128
– also refer to Comfort access 40
Automatic climate control 110
– automatic air distribution 111
– convertible program 111
– switching on and off 114
– ventilation with vehicle parked 114
Automatic closing of doors, refer to Automatic soft closing 35
Automatic curb monitor 56
Automatic lighting
– refer to Automatic headlamp control 104
– refer to Daytime running lamps 105
– refer to High-beam assistant 106
– refer to Interior lamps 108
– refer to Pathway lighting 105
– refer to Welcome lamps 104
"Automatic programs" 111
Automatic soft closing 35
Automatic station search 165
"Automatic ventilation" 115
AUTO program for automatic climate control 111
"Auto Request" 203
"Autostore" on the radio 164, 166
"AUX" 160, 180, 182
AUX-IN connection 119, 180
"AUX IN" in audio mode 180
Average fuel consumption 77
– setting units 86
Average speed 77
"Avoid ferries" in navigation 147
"Avoid highways" in navigation 147
Avoiding freeways for navigation 146
Avoiding unintentional alarms 38
"Avoid tollroads" in navigation 147
Axle loads, refer to Weights 245
"A - Z" 194

B

Backrest contour, refer to Lumbar support 50
Backrests, refer to Seats 49
Backup lamps, replacing bulbs, refer to Tail lamps 232
"Balance", tone control 162
Band-aids, refer to First-aid kit 236
Bass, refer to Tone control 161
"Bass", tone control 161
Battery
– jump starting 236
– refer to Vehicle battery 233
Battery replacement, remote control for comfort access 40
BC button, refer to Computer 77
Being towed 238
Belts, refer to Safety belts 54
Beverage holder, refer to Cup holders 120
Blower, refer to Air volume 112
"Bluetooth" 187
BMW
– Car Shampoo 230
"BMW Assist" 202, 203
BMW Assist 201
– activating 206
– BMW TeleServices 203
– concierge service 204
– contacting BMW Customer Relations 204
– displaying vehicle data 207
– offered services 201
– roadside assistance 202
– updating 205
"BMW Contact" 196
"BMW Contact Numbers" 196
BMW homepage 4
BMW maintenance system 225
BMW Night Vision 100
– activating 101
– cleaning camera 102
– cleaning camera, refer to Wiper system 67
– deactivating 101
– making settings 102
"BMW Service settings" 206
BMW TeleServices 203

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

BMW TeleServices services
– displaying 204
– updating 204
BMW website 4
Bottle holder, refer to Cup holders 120
Bracket for telephone or mobile phone
– refer to Snap-in adapter 199
Brake assistant 88
– adaptive 89
Brake force display 95
Brake lamps
– replacing bulbs, refer to Tail lamps 232
– two-stage 95
Brake rotors
– breaking-in 126
– refer to Braking safely 128
Brakes
– ABS Antilock Brake System 88
– brake force display 95
– breaking-in 126
– CBC Cornering Brake Control 88
– handbrake 62
– refer to Braking safely 128
Brake system 126
– brake pads 126
– brake rotors 128
– breaking-in 126
– warning lamp 13, 90
Braking
– electronic brake-force distribution 88
Braking safely 128
Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance 236
Breaking-in brake pads 126
Breaking-in the clutch 126
Breaking-in the differential, refer to Engine and differential 126
Break-in period 126
"Brightness" 86, 99
Brightness of Control Display 85
"Brightness" with BMW Night Vision 102
Button for starting engine, refer to Start/Stop button 60
Buttons on steering wheel 11

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 6
Call 194, 205
– accepting 192
– displaying accepted 195
– ending 193
– in absence 195
– rejecting 193
– starting 193
Calling
– by entering phone number 193
– from phone book 194
– from Top 8 list 195
– redialing 195
Can holder, refer to Cup holders 120
Capacities 245
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 233
"Car Data" 78
Care 227
– car-care products 227
– carpets 229
– car washes 227
– CD/DVD player 230
– chrome components 229
– convertible top 228
– displays 230
– exterior 227
– fine wooden components 230
– hand washing 228
– headlamps 228
– high-pressure cleaning jets 227
– interior 229
– leather 229
– light-alloy wheels 229
– paint 228
– plastic components 230
– rubber gaskets 229
– safety belts 230
– sensors and cameras 230
– upholstery and cloth-covered paneling 229
– windows 228
– wiper blades 228
Cargo bay
– capacity 245
– emergency release 37
– opening/closing, refer to Luggage compartment lid 36
– opening from inside 36
– opening from outside 36
– opening with remote control 33
Caring for the vehicle finish 228
Car key, refer to Keys/remote control 30
Car phone 186
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 119
– refer to Mobile phone 186
– refer to separate operating instructions
Car radio, refer to Radio 164
Car Shampoo 230

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Car wash 61, 128
– refer to Before driving into a car wash 128
– with comfort access 40
Car washes 227
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 127
"Categories" 172
CBC Cornering Brake Control 88
CBS Condition Based Service 225
"CD" 160, 174
CD changer 174
– controls 160
– fast forward/reverse 178
– installation location 178
– random sequence 177
– repeating a track 177
– sampling tracks 176
– selecting a CD 174
– selecting a track 175
– switching on/off 160
– tone control 161
– volume 161
CD player 174
– controls 160
– fast forward/reverse 178
– random sequence 177
– repeating a track 177
– sampling a track 176
– selecting a track 175
– switching on/off 160
– tone control 161
– volume 161
Center armrest, adjusting height 119
Center console 14
"Central locking" 32
Central locking
– from inside 34
– from outside 32
Central locking system 31
– comfort access 38
– hotel function 35
Changes, technical, refer to For your own safety 6
Changing language on Control Display 86
Changing scale for navigation 150
Changing units of measure on Control Display 86
Changing wheels 218, 233
CHECK button 82
Check Control 81
"Check Control messages" 82
Check Gas Cap 212
Checking air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 214
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 58
Child restraint systems 58
Child seats, refer to Transporting children safely 58
Chrome-plated parts 230
Chrome polish 230
Cigarette lighter 121
Cigarette lighter socket, refer to Connecting electrical devices 121
Cleaning your BMW, refer to Care 227
"Climate" 111
Clock 76
– 12h/24h format 85
– hour signal 85
– setting time and date 84
Closing
– from inside 34
– from outside 32
Closing fuel filler cap 212
Clothes hooks, Coupe 120
Cockpit 10
Cold start, refer to Starting engine 61
Combined instrument, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Comfort access 38
– observe in car wash 40
– replacing battery, remote control 40
Comfort closing
– windows, with comfort access with Coupe 39
– with comfort access 39
"Communication" 192, 202, 203
Compact Disc
– refer to CD changer 174
– refer to CD player 174
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 60
Compartments, refer to Storage compartments 120
Compressed audio files 174
Computer 77
– displays on Control Display 78
– hour signal 85
"Concert hall", tone control 162
"Concierge" 205
Concierge service 204
Condensation, refer to When vehicle is parked 128
Condition Based Service CBS 225
"Confirmation" 33
Confirmation signals for locking and unlocking 33
Connecting car vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical devices 121
Consumption display, refer to Average fuel consumption 77
Consumption statistics, refer to Average fuel consumption 77
"Continue guidance to destination?" 149
"Contrast" with BMW Night Vision 102
Control Center, refer to iDrive 16
Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– setting brightness 85
– switching off/on 22
Controller, refer to iDrive 16
Controls, refer to Cockpit 10

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Convenient operation
– convertible top 33, 34
– glass sunroof 32, 34
– windows 32, 34
Convertible
– convertible program for automatic climate control 111
– opening and closing windows 41
– rollover protection system 97
– top 44
– wind deflector 47
Convertible top
– closing manually 45
– convenient operation 34
– emergency closing 45
– opening and closing 44
Convertible top care 228
Coolant 223
– checking level 224
– temperature 76
Cooling, maximum 113
Cooling fluid, refer to Coolant 223
Cooling function, automatic climate control 113
Cooling system, refer to Coolant 223
Copyright 2
Cornering Brake Control CBC 88
Country of destination for navigation 137
Courtesy lamps, refer to Interior lamps 108
Cradle for telephone or mobile phone 119
Cruise control 67
– active cruise control 68
Cruising range 77
Cup holders 15, 120
Curb weight, refer to Weights 245
"Current position" 155
Current position
– displaying 155
– entering 144
– storing 144
"Curve mode" with BMW Night Vision 102
"Customer Relations" 196, 204
Cylinders, refer to Engine data 242

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10
Dashboard lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 108
Data, technical 242
– dimensions 243
– engine 242
– weights 245
"Date" 85
Date 76
– date format 85
– setting 85
"Date format" 85
"Daytime running lamps" 105, 108
Daytime running lamps 105
– replacing bulbs 232
"Deactivated" 52
Defect
– door lock 34
– glass sunroof 43
– luggage compartment lid 36
– tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 90
– tires, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 92
Defrosting windows 112
Defrosting windows and removing condensation 112
Defrosting windshield, refer to Defrosting windows 112
Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows 112
"Delete address book" in navigation 146
"Delete all numbers" in mobile phone mode 195
"Delete data" in navigation 146
"Delete" in mobile phone mode 195
Destination address
– deleting 145
– entering 136, 139
Destination for navigation
– destination list 143
– entering via voice 139
– entry 136
– selecting from address book 145
– selecting using information 142
– storing 144
Destination guidance 148
– bypassing route sections 152
– canceling voice instructions 57
– changing specified route 146
– displaying route 149
– distance and arrival 148
– interrupting 148
– starting 148
– terminating/continuing 148
– voice instructions 151
– volume of voice instructions 152
Destination list for navigation 143
Destinations recently driven to 143
"Details" in audio mode 176, 182
"Details" in radio mode 172
"Detour" in navigation 155
"Dial" in mobile phone mode 193
"Dial number" 193
"Diamond button" 57
Digital clock 76
Digital radio, refer to High Definition Radio 168

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Dimensions
– Convertible 244
– Coupe 243
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 65
Direction announcements, refer to Voice instructions 151
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 151
Directory, refer to Phone book 194
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 144
Displacement, refer to Engine data 242
"Display" 86
Display, refer to iDrive controls 16
Display elements, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Displaying vehicle data 207
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 108
"Display off" 22
Displays
– on Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– refer to Instrument cluster 12
"Display settings" 85, 99
Displays on the windshield, refer to Head-Up Display 98
Disposal
– battery of remote control with comfort access 40
– coolant 223
– vehicle battery 233
Distance, refer to Computer 78
Distance control, refer to Active cruise control 68
Distance to destination, refer to Computer 78
Distance warning, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 87
Door entry lighting, refer to Interior lamps 108
Door key, refer to Keys/remote control 30
Door lock 34
"Door locks" 32, 80
Doors
– manual operation 34
– remote control 32
DOT Quality Grades 216
Draft-free ventilation 114
Drinks holder, refer to Cup holders 120
"Driver's door only" 32
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 104
Driving route, refer to Displaying route 149
Driving stability control systems 88
Driving through water 128
Driving tips, refer to General driving notes 126
Dry air, refer to Cooling function 113
Drying the air, refer to Cooling function 113
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 89
– indicator lamp 13, 89
– malfunction 90
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 89
– activating 89
– indicator lamp 13, 90
DVD for navigation 134
Dynamic Brake Control DBC
– warning lamp 90
Dynamic Drive 90
Dynamic Driving Control 64
"Dynamic route" in navigation 147
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 89
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 89

E

Easy entry, refer to Entering rear 53
Easy entry/exit 56
Eject button, refer to Buttons in area of CD player 160
Electrical malfunction
– convertible top 45
– door lock 34
– driver's door 34
– fuel filler door 212
– glass sunroof 43
– luggage compartment lid 36
– storage compartment, hotel function 35
Electrical steering wheel adjustment 56
Electric convertible top 44
Electronic brake-force distribution 88
Electronic oil level check 222
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– convertible top 45
– door lock 34
– driver's door 34
– fuel filler door 212
– glass sunroof 43
– hotel function 35
– luggage compartment lid 36
– transmission lock, sport automatic transmission 64
Emergency release for luggage compartment lid in cargo bay 37
Emergency request 235
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 236
"Enabled services" 207
"Enabled TeleServices" 204
"Enable services" 207
"End call" 194

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Engine
– breaking-in 126
– data 242
– overheated, refer to Coolant temperature 76
– speed 242
– starting 61
– starting, comfort access 38
– switching off 61
– switching off when equipped with Automatic transmission, with comfort access 40
Engine compartment 221
Engine coolant 223
Engine oil
– adding 223
– additives, refer to Approved engine oils 223
– approved oils 223
– electronic oil level check 222
– interval between changes, refer to Service requirements 79
– oil change 223
– oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 223
– recommended oils 223
– temperature 77
– temperature gauge 77
"Engine oil level" 222
Engine output, refer to Engine data 242
Engine speed, refer to Engine data 242
Engine starting, refer to Starting engine 61
"Enter address" 136, 144
Entering destination via town/city name 137
Entering intersection, navigation 138
Entering rear 53
Entering the address 136, 139
Entering town/city for navigation 137
Entering zip code for navigation 138
"Entertainment" 160
Entertainment sound output on/off 161
Entry map for destination 141
Equalizer, refer to Tone control 163
"Equalizer", tone control 163
"ESN" 171
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 89
Event Data Recorders 226
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 127
Exterior mirrors 55
– adjusting 55
– automatic dimming feature 56
– automatic heating 55
– folding in and out 55
– tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 56
External audio device 119
Eye for tow-starting and towing, refer to Tow fitting 237

CarManuals2.com

F

Fader, refer to Tone control 162
"Fader", tone control 162
Failure messages, refer to Check Control 81
False alarm
– refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms 38
– refer to Switching off alarm 37
Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 54
Fastest route for navigation 146
"Fast route" in navigation 147
Filler neck for washer fluid 67
Filter, refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 114
First aid, refer to First-aid kit 236
First-aid kit 236
Flashing
– during locking/unlocking, refer to Setting confirmation signals 33
– triple turn signal activation 66
Flat tire
– Flat Tire Monitor 90
– run-flat tires 92, 93, 218
– Tire Pressure Monitor 92
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 92
– warning lamp 92, 93
Flat tire, refer to Run-flat tires 218
Flat Tire Monitor 90
– false alarms 91
– initializing system 91
– snow chains 219
– system limits 91
– warning lamp 92
Fluid reservoir, refer to Filler neck for washer fluid 67
FM, waveband 164
"FM" waveband 160, 164
Fog lamps 108
– indicator lamp 13, 108
Folding into raised position convertible top compartment floor, Convertible 37
Footbrake, refer to Braking safely 128
Footwell lamps, refer to Interior lamps 108
Forward, fast
– CD changer 178
– CD player 178
For your own safety 6
Freeway, refer to Route criteria 146
Front airbags 95
Front passenger airbags
– deactivating 96
"FTM" 91

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 90
Fuel
– average consumption 77
– display 77
– fuel specifications 213
– high-quality brands 213
– quality 213
– refer to Average fuel consumption 77
– specifications 213
– tank contents, refer to Capacities 245
Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge 77
Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 77
Fuel-efficient driving
– refer to Saving fuel 126
Fuel filler door 212
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 212
Full mobile phone preparation package 186
Full screen display, refer to Switching assistance window off 21
"Full screen" with BMW Night Vision 102
Fuses 234

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 117
Gasoline, refer to Fuel specifications 213
Gasoline, refer to Required fuel 213
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 77
Gearshift lever
– manual transmission 62
General driving notes 126, 127
Glass sunroof, electric with raise function 42
– convenient operation 34
– convenient operation with comfort access 39
– moving manually 43
– remote control 32
Glove compartment 118
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 134
Grills, refer to Ventilation 114
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 245

H

Handbrake 62
– indicator lamp 13, 62
Hands-free system, refer to Microphone 14
Hand washing 228
Hazard warning flashers 15
"HD radio" 168
HD radio, refer to High Definition Radio 168
Head airbags 95
Headlamp
– cleaning tank, refer to Capacities 245
Headlamp control, automatic 104
Headlamp flasher 65
Headlamps
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 66
– filler neck for washer fluid 221
– replacing bulbs 231
Head Light, refer to Adaptive Head Light 106
Head restraints
– active front head restraints 52
– front 52
– sitting safely 49
Head-Up Display 98, 99
Heated
– mirrors 55
– rear window 112
– seats 55
– steering wheel 56
Heating 111
– exterior mirrors 55
– interior 110
– rear window 112
– residual heat 114
– seats 55
– steering wheel 56
Heating with engine switched off, refer to Residual heat 114
Heavy cargo, refer to Securing cargo 130
Height, refer to Dimensions 243
Height adjustment
– seats 50
– steering wheel 56
High-beam assistant 106
High beams 106
– headlamp flasher 106
– indicator lamp 13
High Definition Radio 168
High-pressure cleaning jets 227, 228
High water, refer to Driving through water 128
Hills 128
Holder for cups 120
"Home address" in navigation 146
Homepage of BMW 4
Hood 220
Horn 10
Hotel function 35
– unlocking manually 35
Hot exhaust system 127
"Hour memo" 85
"House number" in destination entry 139
Hydraulic brake assist, refer to Brake assist 88
Hydroplaning 127
– also refer to Minimum tread depth 217

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

I

IBOC, refer to High Definition Radio 168
Ice on roads, refer to Outside temperature warning 76
ID3 tag, refer to Information on track 176
Identification mark
– recommended tire brands 219
– run-flat tires 218
– tire coding 216
iDrive 16
– assistance window 21
– changing date and time 84
– changing language 86
– changing menu page 20
– changing settings 84
– changing units of measure and display type 86
– confirming selection or entry 20
– controller 16
– controls 16
– displays, menus 18
– operating principle 18
– selecting menu item 20
– setting brightness 85
– start menu 18
– status information 21
– symbols 19
Ignition 60
– switched off 61
– switched on 60
Ignition key, refer to Keys/ remote control 30
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 60
Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 60
Ignition lock 60
– starting engine with comfort access 39
i menu 18
Imprint 2
Indicator/warning lamps
– ABS Antilock Brake System 90
– active steering 95
– airbags 97
– brake system 90
– DSC 13, 89
– DTC 13, 90
– Flat Tire Monitor 92
– fog lamps 13, 108
– handbrake 13, 62
– safety belt warning 54
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 93
Indicator and warning lamps
– overview 13
Indicator lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 108
Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 214
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 90
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 92
Info menu 18
Information
– on another location 142
– on current position 142
– on destination location 142
"Information" in navigation 142
Information menu, refer to i menu 18
"Information on destination" 144
"Info sources" 79
Initializing
– Flat Tire Monitor 91
– radio, refer to Storing stations 166
– refer to Power failure 233
– seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 51
– time and date 84
"Input map" 141
Installation location
– CD changer 178
– drive for navigation DVD 134
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 151
Instrument cluster 12
Instrument lighting 108
Instrument panel, refer to Cockpit 10
Integrated key 30
Integrated universal remote control 117
Interesting destination for navigation 142
"Interim time" 84
Interior lamps 108
– switching on with remote control 33
Interior motion sensor 38
– switching off 38
Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature 56
Intermittent mode of the wipers 66

J

CarManuals2.com

Jacking points 233
Joystick, refer to iDrive 16
Jumpering, refer to Jump starting 236
Jump starting 236

K

Keyless-Go, refer to Comfort access 38
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort access 38
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 30
"Keypad" 196
Keys 30
– key-related settings, refer to Personal Profile 30
– spare key 30
Kick-down, Sport automatic transmission 63
Knee airbags 95
Knock control 213

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

L

Lamps
– refer to High-beam assistant 106
– refer to Parking lamps/low beams 104
Lamps and bulbs 231
Lane limit lines, refer to Leaving lane warning 102
"Language / Units" 86
"Language / Units" in navigation 135, 151
"Languages" 86
"Languages" in navigation 135, 151
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 130
Last destinations, refer to Destination list 143
"Last seat pos." 52
LATCH child restraint fixing system 58
Leather care 229
Leaving lane warning 102
LEDs light-emitting diodes 231
Length, refer to Dimensions 243
License plate lamp, replacing bulbs 233
Light-emitting diodes LEDs 231
Lighter 121
"Lighting" 66, 105
Lighting
– instruments 108
– lamps and bulbs 231
– of the vehicle, refer to Lamps 104
Light switch 104
"Limit" 83
Loading
– securing cargo 130
– stowing cargo 129
– vehicle 129
Loading, refer to Cargo loading 129
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 130
"Lock after driving" 35
Lock buttons in the doors, refer to Lokking 35
Locking 33
– confirmation signals 33
– from inside 35
– from outside 33
– without key, refer to Comfort access 38
Locking and unlocking doors
– confirmation signals 33
– from inside 34
– from outside 32
Low beams 104
– automatic 104
– replacing bulbs 232
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 50
Luggage compartment
– hotel function 35
– increasing capacity, Convertible 37
Luggage compartment lid 35
– emergency operation 36
– emergency release 37
– opening from inside 36
– opening from outside 36
– opening with remote control 33, 36
– unlocking manually 36
Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate
– comfort access 39
Lumbar support 50
LW, waveband 164

M

M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 219
Maintenance 225
– refer to Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 225
– refer to Service requirements 79
– refer to Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 225
Maintenance system 225
Malfunction
– convertible top 45
– driver's door 34
– fuel filler door 212
– hotel function 35
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 81
Manual air distribution 112
"Manual" in radio mode 165
Manual operation
– convertible top 45
– door lock 34
– driver's door 34
– fuel filler door 212
– glass sunroof 43
– hotel function 35
– luggage compartment lid 36
– transmission lock, sport automatic transmission 64
Manual transmission 62
"Map direction of travel" 150
Map display 150
"Map facing north" 150
Map for navigation
– changing scale 150
– destination entry 141
Map view facing north 150
Master key, refer to Keys/ remote control 30
Maximum cooling 113
Maximum speed with winter tires 219
Measurements, refer to Dimensions
– Convertible 244
– Coupe 243
Memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 51

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

MENU, button refer to Start menu 18
Menus, refer to iDrive 16
Message list, traffic information 153
Microfilter 114
Microphone
– for mobile phone 14
– for voice command system 14
Mirror dimming feature 56
Mirrors 55
– automatic curb monitor 56
– folding in and out 55
– heating 55
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 51
"Missed calls" 194
Missed calls 195
Mobile phone
– accepted calls 195
– adjusting volume 192
– calling 193
– ending call 193
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 119
– missed calls 195
– operation by voice 197
– operation via iDrive 192
– redialing 195
– refer to separate operating instructions
– Top 8 195
– touch tone dialing, refer to Tone dialing method 196
Mobile phone, refer to separate operating instructions
Mobile phone battery 200
Monitor, refer to iDrive 16
Monitoring pressure of tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 90
"Monitor on / off" 57
Most recent mobile phone numbers 195
MP3
– compressed audio files 174
– USB-audio interface/mobile phone audio interface 181
Multi-function steering wheel, refer to Buttons on steering wheel 11
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/ headlamp flasher 65
– refer to Wiper system 66
Music tracks
– finding 176
– random play sequence 177
– sampling, scan 176
"Mute on / off" 57
MW, waveband 164

N

"Navigation" 78, 136
Navigation destination
– entering manually 136
– home address 146
– selecting via map 141
Navigation drive, installation location 134
Navigation DVD 134
Navigation instructions, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 151
Navigation system 134
– address book 144
– bypassing route sections 152
– destination entry 136
– destination guidance in assistance window 134
– destination list 143
– displaying current position 155
– displaying route 149
– entering a destination manually 136
– entering destination via voice 139
– last destinations 143
– navigation DVD 134
– route list 151
– searching for a special destination 142
– selecting destination using information 142
– selecting destination via map 141
– selecting route criteria 146
– starting destination guidance 148
– switching off, refer to Terminating/continuing destination guidance 148
– terminating/continuing destination guidance 148
– voice instructions 151
– volume adjustment 152
"Navigation voice instructions" 57, 151
Neck support, refer to Front head restraints 52
"New address" in navigation 144
"New destination" 136, 141
New remote control 30
"New route" 152
New wheels and tires 218
"Next entertainment source" 57
Night Vision, refer to BMW Night Vision 100
"Night Vision off" 102

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

"Night Vision on / off" 57
Nozzles, refer to Windshield washer nozzles 67
Nylon rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 237

O

OBD socket, refer to Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 226
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 213
Odometer 76
Oil, refer to Engine oil 222
Oil change intervals
– refer to Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models
– refer to Service requirements 79
"On a new destination" in navigation 142
Onboard computer, refer to iDrive 16
"Onboard info" 78
Onboard toolkit 231
"On destination" 142
"On location" 142
Opening and closing
– comfort access 38
– from inside 34
– from outside 32
– using remote control 32
– using the door lock 34
Operating principle, iDrive 18
Operation by voice for mobile phone 197
– adjusting volume 198
– canceling 197
– commands 197
– correcting phone number 198
– dialing phone number 198
– placing a call 198
– redialing 199
– voice phone book 198
"Options" 205, 206
Orientation menu, refer to Start menu 18
Output, refer to Engine data 242
Outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 113
Outside temperature display 76
– changing unit of measure 86
Overheated engine, refer to Coolant temperature 76
Overview
– operating principle 18
– radio control 160
– screen display 21

P

Panic mode 33
Park Distance Control PDC 87
"Parked car operation" 115
"Parked car ventilation" 115
Parked car ventilation
– activating activation time 115
– preselecting activation times 115
– switching on and off directly 115
Parked car ventilation system
– LED 110
Parking
– vehicle 61
Parking aid, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 87
Parking assistant, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 87
Parking brake, refer to Handbrake 62
Parking lamps 104
– replacing bulbs 232
Parts and accessories 6
Passenger-side exterior mirror, tilting down 56
"Pathway lighting" 105
Pathway lighting 105
"PDC" 88
"PDC display on" 88
PDC Park Distance Control 87
Personal Profile 30
"Perspective" 150
"Phone" 188, 190, 193
Phone book 192
– changing entry 194
– creating and editing voice phone book 198
– deleting all entries 195
– deleting entry 195
– dialing phone number 194
Phone numbers
– deleting from phone book 195
– dialing 193
– most recent numbers 195
– selecting in phone book 195
– Top 8 195
Pinch protection system
– glass sunroof 43
– power windows 42
Plasters, refer to First-aid kit 236
Plug-in unit for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 60
Polish 230
Pollen, refer to Microfilter/ activated charcoal filter 114
Position, refer to Displaying current position 155
Position, refer to Storing current position 144
Power failure 233

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Power windows, refer to Windows 40
Preselecting activation times of the parked car ventilation 115
"Presets" in radio mode 164, 172
Pressure, tires 214
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 92
"Profile" 208
Programmable buttons on steering wheel 57
Programmable memory buttons 22
Protective function, refer to Pinch protection system
– glass sunroof 43
– windows 42

R

Radio
– autostore 166
– controls 160
– High Definition Radio 168
– sampling stations 165
– satellite radio 171
– selecting frequency manually 165
– selecting waveband 160, 164
– station search 165
– station selection 164
– station with the best reception 166
– storing stations 166
– switching on/off 160
– tone control 161
– volume 161
– weatherband, refer to Weather news flashes 168
Radio key, refer to Keys/ remote control 30
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 60
Radio readiness 60
– switched off 61
– switched on 60
– with comfort access 39
Radio stations
– storing 166
Rain sensor, windshield wiper system 66
"Random", random play sequence 177
"Random all" in audio mode 178
"Random directory" in audio mode 178
"RDS" 167
Reading lamps 109
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 232
Rearview mirrors, refer to Mirrors 55
Rear window
– heating 112
– opening and closing 41
"Received calls" 194
Reception
– quality 167
– radio stations 167
– regional stations 166
Reception level of mobile phone, refer to Status information 21
Recirculated-air mode, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 113
Recirculation of air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 113
Reclining seat, refer to Seats 49
Recording times, refer to Stopwatch 83
Redialing with mobile phone 199
"Redial" in mobile phone mode 194
Reflectors, refer to Tail lamps 232
Refueling 212
Releasing
– hood 220
Releasing the locks, refer to Unlocking 39
"Relock door if not opened" 35
Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range 77
Remaining distance to destination, refer to Computer 78
Remote control 30
– comfort access 38
– garage door opener 117
– luggage compartment lid 33
– malfunction 33, 40
– replacing battery 40
Removing condensation on the windows 112
"Repeat directory" in audio mode 177
"Repeat" in audio mode 177
"Repeat track" in audio mode 177
Replacement fuses 234
Replacement of tires
– refer to Changing wheels 233
Replacement remote control, refer to New remote controls 30
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 231
Replacing wheels/tires, refer to New wheels and tires 218
Reporting safety defects 7
Required fuel 213
Reserve
– warning, refer to Fuel gauge 77
"Reset" 91, 93
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 163
"Reset" for stopwatch 84
"Reset" tone settings 163
Residual heat 114
Restraint systems
– for children 58
– refer to Safety belts 54

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Retreaded tires 218
Reverse, fast
– CD changer 178
– CD player 178
Reverse gear
– manual transmission 62
– Sport automatic transmission 63
Road map 150
"Roadside Assistance" 196, 202
Roadside assistance 202, 236
Roadside parking lamps 106
– replacing bulbs, refer to Parking lamps 232
Rollover protection system on Convertible 97
– lowering 98
Rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 237
Rotary/pushbutton, refer to iDrive 16
Route 146
– bypassing sections 152
– changing 152
– changing criteria 146
– displaying 149
– displaying arrow display 149
– displaying map view 150
– displaying streets or towns/cities 151
– selecting 146
Route information, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 151
Route map, refer to Displaying map view 150
"Route preference", changing 146
Route selection 146
RSC Runflat System Component, refer to Run-flat tires 218
Run-flat System Component RSC, refer to Run-flat tires 218
Run-flat tires 218
– continuing driving with a damaged tire 92, 93
– flat tire 92, 93
– Flat Tire Monitor 90
– new tires 218, 219
– tire inflation pressure 214
– Tire Pressure Monitor 92
– winter tires 219

S

Safety belts 54
– damage 55
– indicator lamp 54
– reminder 54
– sitting safely 49
Safety belt tensioners, refer to Safety belts 54
Safety systems
– ABS Antilock Brake System 88
– airbags 95
– driving stability control systems 88
– rollover protection system, Convertible 97
– safety belts 54
Safety tires, refer to Run-flat tires 218
Satellite radio 171
– enabling channel 171
– selecting channel 171
– storing channel 171
"SAT" in radio mode 160, 171
"Save current destination" 146
"Scan"
– music tracks on CD 176
– stations in radio mode 165
Scan
– CD changer 176
– CD player 176
– radio 165
"Scan all" in audio mode 176
"Scan directory" in audio mode 176
Screen, refer to iDrive 16
Screw thread for tow fitting 238
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 171
Seats 49
– adjusting the seats 50
– heating 55
– lumbar support 50
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 51
– sitting safely 49
– sports seat 50
– storing the setting 51
– thigh support 50
Securing cargo 130
– ski bag 122
"Select as destination" 142, 205
"Select current speed" 83
Selecting audio sources, refer to Operation via iDrive 160
Selecting distance with active cruise control 70
Selecting frequency manually 165
Selecting menu items 20
Selecting route 146
Selection options with navigation system 146
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 236
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 225
"Service Info" 79, 203, 222
Service Interval Display
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 225
– refer to Service requirements 79
"Service Request" 196, 203
"Service requirements" 80, 203, 222
Service requirements 79
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 225
"Set date" 85
"Set" in audio mode 160

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

"Set" on trip computer 79
"Set service date" 80
"Set time" 85
Setting button, refer to Controls, controller 16
Settings 207
– BMW Night Vision 102
– changing on Control Display 84
– clock, 12h/24h mode 85
– configuring, refer to Personal Profile 30
– date 85
– language 86
– units of measure 86
"Settings" in unlocking 32
Settings menu, refer to i menu 18
"Settings" with BMW Assist 206
Setting time, refer to Preselecting activation time 115
Shifting, Sport automatic transmission 63
Short commands of voice command system 246
"Short route" in navigation 147
Short route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 146
"Show current position" 142
"Show destination position" 142
Shuffled, refer to Random
– CD changer 177
– CD player 177
Side airbags 95
Side-mounted turn signals, replacing bulbs 232
Signal horn, refer to Horn 10
Sill panel lighting, refer to Interior lamps 108
Sitting safely 49
– with airbags 49
– with head restraint 49
– with safety belts 49
Ski bag 121
Sliding/tilt roof, refer to Glass sunroof, electric with raise function 42
Slope assistant, refer to Starting assistant 90
Snap-in adapter
– mounting/removing 199
– using 186
Snow chains 219
Socket, refer to Connecting electrical devices 121
Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 226
Socket for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 60
Soft closure aid, refer to Automatic soft closing 35
Song search on CD, refer to Sampling tracks 176
SOS, refer to Initiating an emergency request 235
Sound distribution in audio mode
– front/rear fader 162
– right/left balance 162
Spare
– adapter for spare key 30
– fuses 234
– key 30
Special oils, refer to Approved engine oils 223
Specified oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 223
Speed-dependent volume 162
Speed dial, refer to Speedometer 12
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 83
Speedometer 12
"Speed volume", tone control 162
Speed with winter tires 219
Sport automatic transmission 62
– Dynamic Driving Control 64
– kick-down 63
– releasing transmission lock 64
– towing 238, 239
– with comfort access 40
Sport program in the Sport automatic transmission 63
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 88
"Star button" 57
Start/Stop button 60
– starting the engine 61
– switching off the engine 61
"Start" for stopwatch 84
"Start guidance" 139, 148
Starting, refer to Starting engine 61
Starting assistance, refer to Jump starting 236
Starting assistant 90
Starting difficulties, refer to Jump starting 236
Starting off on slopes, refer to Starting assistant 90
Start menu, iDrive 18
"Start route guidance" 142
"Start service" 202
"Start service" with BMW Assist 205
"State / Province" in destination entry 137
"State inspection" 80
Station, refer to Radio 164
"Status" 80
Status information on Control Display 21
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 5
Steam cleaners 227, 228

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Steering wheel
– adjustment 56
– automatic adjustment, refer to Easy entry/exit 56
– automatic adjustment, refer to Steering wheel memory 51
– buttons on steering wheel 11
– heating 56
– lock, refer to Ignition lock 60
– memory 51
– programmable buttons 57
"Steering wheel buttons" 57
Steering with variable ratio, refer to Active steering 95
Steptronic, refer to Sport automatic transmission 62
"Stop" for stopwatch 84
"Stopwatch" 84
Stopwatch 83
Storage compartments 120
"Store in address book" in navigation 144
"Store" in radio mode 167, 172
Storing 230
Storing current position 144
Storing radio stations 166
Storing sitting position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 51
Storing tires 219
Storing your vehicle 230
"Street" in destination entry 138
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 214
"Surround Settings", tone control 162
SW, waveband 164
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching automatically between high beams and low beams, refer to High-beam assistant 106
Switching off
– engine 61
Switching on
– audio 160
– CD changer 160
– CD player 160
– radio 160
Switching on hour signal 85
Swiveling headlamps, refer to Adaptive Head Light 106
Symbols 4
– indicator/warning lamps 13
– navigation system 154
– status information 21
– traffic information with navigation system 152

T

Tachometer 76
Tail lamps 232
– replacing bulbs 232
Tank capacity
– also refer to Capacities 245
– fuel tank capacity 212
Target cursor for navigation 141
Technical alterations, refer to For your own safety 6
Technical data 242
– capacities 245
– dimensions 243
Telematics, refer to BMW Assist 201
Telephone
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 119
– refer to Mobile phone 186
– refer to separate operating instructions
"Telephone list" 57
Temperature
– adjusting in upper body region 112
– adjusting with automatic climate control 111
– changing units of measure 86
– refer to Coolant temperature 76
Temperature display
– changing units of measure 86
– outside temperature 76
– outside temperature warning 76
Temperature gauge
– engine oil 77
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 67
"Text language" 86
"Theater", tone control 162
The individual vehicle 5
Tilt alarm sensor 38
– switching off 38
Tilting down of passenger-side mirror 56
"Time" 85
"Time / Date" 84
"Time format" 85
Timer, refer to Preselecting activation times 115
"Timer 2" for parked-car ventilation 115
"Timer 1" for parked-car ventilation 115
Tire inflation pressure 214
Tire pressure
– loss 92, 93
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 92
Tire Quality Grading 216
Tire replacement
– new wheels and tires 218

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Tires
– age 216
– air loss 92, 93
– breaking-in 126
– condition 217
– damage 217
– inflation pressure 214
– minimum tread depth 217
– new wheels and tires 218
– pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 90
– pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 92
– replacing 218
– retreaded tires 218
– run-flat tires 218
– size 215
– size, refer to The right wheels and tires 218
– wear indicators 217
– wheel/tire combination 218
– winter tires 219
Tires, run-flat
– refer to Run-flat tires 218
– winter tires 219
TMC station, refer to Traffic information 152
"Tone" 161
Tone dialing method 196
Tone in audio mode
– adjusting 161
– middle setting 163
Tone on locking/unlocking 33
Tools, refer to Onboard toolkit 231
Top 44
"Top 8" in mobile phone mode 194
Torque, refer to Engine data 242
Touch tone dialing, refer to Tone dialing method 196
Tow bar 238
Tow fitting 237
Towing 237
– methods 238
– tow fittings 237
– with manual transmission 238
– with Sport automatic transmission 238
"Town / City" in destination entry 137
Tow rope 238
Tow-starting 237
"TPM" 93
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 92
– resetting system 93
– system limits 92
– warning lamp 93
Tracks
– random sequence 177
– sampling on CD 176
– selecting with CD 175
Traction-assist feature, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 89
Traction control, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 89
Traffic information for navigation 152
– depiction in route map 154
– displaying 153
– during destination guidance 155
– symbols 154
"Traffic Info settings" 153
Traffic jam
– displaying traffic information 152
– refer to Bypassing route sections 152
Transmission
– manual transmission 62
– sport automatic transmission 62
– starting assistant 90
– towing 238
– transmission lock, manually locking and unlocking, sport automatic transmission 64
Transporting children safely 58
Transport securing device, refer to Securing cargo 130
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tire tread 217
Treble, refer to Tone control 161
"Treble", tone control 161
"Trip computer" 79
Trip computer 78
Trip-distance counter
– refer to Trip computer 78
– refer to Trip meter 76
"Triple turn signal" 66
Trip meter 76
– also refer to Trip computer 78
Trip odometer, refer to Trip meter 76
Trunk, refer to Luggage compartment 37
Trunk lid, refer to Luggage compartment lid 35
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 243
Turn signals 65

CarManuals2.com

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading/ UTQR 216
"Units" 86
Units
– temperature 86
Units of measure
– average fuel consumption 86
Universal garage-door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 117
Universal remote control, refer to Integrated universal remote control 117
"Unlock button" 32

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Unlocking
– from inside 35
– from outside 32
– setting unlocking behavior 32
– without key, refer to Comfort access 38
"Update services" 206
USB-audio interface/mobile phone audio interface 181
"USB" in audio mode 182
"Use current location as address" 144, 146
Used batteries
– refer to Disposal 233
– refer to Replacing battery 40
Using turn signals 65

V

Vehicle
– battery 233
– breaking-in 126
– loading 129
– measurements, refer to Dimensions 243
– parking 61
– weights 245
"Vehicle / Tires" in unlokking 32
Vehicle care, refer to Care 227
Vehicle jack 233
– jacking points 233
Vehicle position, refer to Displaying current position 155
Ventilation 114
– draft-free 114
– for cooling 114
– parked car ventilation 114
Venting
– refer to Ventilation 114
Vent outlets of automatic climate control 110
Vents, refer to Ventilation 114
"Vent settings" 113
Viscosity 223
Voice, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 151
Voice command system
– overview 24
– short commands 246
Voice instructions for navigation system 151
– muting 57
– repeating 57, 152
– switching on/off 57, 151
– volume 152
Voice phone book 198
Volume 160
– audio sources 160
– cargo bay 245
– fuel tank, refer to Capacities 245
– mobile phone 192
– speed-dependent control 162
– voice instructions 152
– windshield cleaning system, refer to Capacities 245

W

CarManuals2.com

Warning lamps, refer to Indicator and warning lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 81
Warning on leaving lane, refer to Leaving lane warning 102
Warning triangle 236
Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 225
Washer fluid
– capacity of the reservoir 67
– wiper system 67
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 128
Water penetration 227, 228
Waveband for radio 164
"WB" 160, 168
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 217
Weather news flashes 168
Website BMW 4
Weights 245
Welcome lamps 104
Wheel/tire combination, refer to New wheels and tires 218
Wheel/tire damage 217
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 243
Wheels and tires 214
Width, refer to Dimensions 243
Wind deflector 47
Windows 40
– comfort closing with comfort access 39
– convenient operation 32, 34
– opening and closing, Convertible 41
– opening and closing, Coupe 40
– rear window, Convertible 41
Windshield
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 66
– defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows 112
– displays, refer to Head-Up Display 98
Windshield wash
– automatic, refer to Rain sensor 66
– capacities, reservoir 245
– filler neck for washer fluid 221
– nozzles 67
– washer fluid 67
– wiper system 66
Windshield wipers, refer to Wiper system 66
– wiper blade replacement 231
Winter tires 219
– setting speed limit 83
– storage 219
Wiper blades
– replacement 231

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG

Wiper system 66
– rain sensor 66
– washer fluid 67
– windshield washer nozzles 67
"With highways" in navigation 147
Word matching principle for navigation 147
Working in the engine compartment 220
Wrenches/screwdrivers, refer to Onboard toolkit 231

X

Xenon lamps 232
– replacing bulbs 232

Y

Your individual vehicle
– programmable buttons on steering wheel 57
– settings, refer to Personal Profile 30

CarManuals2.com

Z

"Zoom" with BMW Night Vision 102

CarManuals2.com

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

CarManuals2.com

01 41 2 600 759 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 600 759 - © 08/08 BMW AG